SEAT

OWNER'S MANUAL

Toledo

About this manual

This manual contains a description of the **equipment** supplied with the vehicle at the time this manual was published. Some of the units described herein will not be available until a later date or are only available in certain markets.

Because this is a general manual for the TOLEDO, some of the equipment and functions that are described in this manual are not included in all types or variants of the model; they may vary or be modified depending on the technical requirements and on the market; this is in no way deceptive advertising.

The **illustrations** are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle in some details.

The **steering indications** (left, right, forward, reverse) appearing in this manual refer to the normal driving movements of the vehicle except when otherwise indicated.

* The **equipment marked with an asterisk*** is fitted as standard only in certain versions, and is only supplied as optional extras for some versions, or are only offered in certain countries.

® All **registered marks** are indicated with ®. Although the copyright symbol does not appear, it is a copyrighted mark.

» The section is continued on the following page.

⚠ WARNING

Texts preceded by this symbol contain information on safety. They warn you about possible dangers of accident or injury.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts preceded by this symbol contain relevant information concerning environmental protection.

Note

Texts preceded by this symbol contain additional information.

This manual is divided into five large parts, which are:

1. Safety
2. Operation
3. Tips
4. Technical data
5. Alphabetical index

At the end of this manual, there is a detailed alphabetical index that will help you quickly find the information you require.

Foreword

This Instruction Manual and its corresponding supplements should be read carefully to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

Besides the regular care and maintenance of the vehicle, its correct handling will help preserve its value.

For safety reasons, always note the information concerning accessories, modifications and part replacements.

If selling the vehicle, give all of the on-board documentation to the new owner, as it should be kept with the vehicle.

You can access the information in this manual using:

- Thematic table of contents that follows the manual's general chapter structure
- Alphabetical index with many terms and synonyms to help you find information.

⚠ WARNING

Read and always observe safety information concerning the passenger's front airbag **»» page 25, Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag.**

Table of Contents

Safety ... 5
Safe driving ... 5
Safety first! ... 5
Advice about driving ... 5
Sitting position for vehicle occupants ... 6
Pedal area ... 10
Seat belts ... 11
The reasons why we should wear seat belts ... 11
How to properly adjust your seatbelt ... 14
Seat belt tensioners ... 15
Airbag system ... 16
Brief introduction ... 16
Airbag overview ... 19
Deactivating airbags ... 22
Transporting children safety ... 24
Safety for children ... 24
Child seats ... 26

Operation ... 29
Controls and displays ... 29
Overview ... 28
Instruments and warning lamps ... 30
Dash ... 30
Control lamps ... 32
Information system ... 39
Multi-function display* (on board computer) ... 39
MAXI DOT* (Informative display) ... 43
Maintenance interval display* ... 45
Communication ... 46
Steering wheel controls* ... 46
Multimedia ... 51
Opening and closing ... 51
Remote control ... 51
Keys ... 53
Central locking system ... 54
Anti-theft alarm system* ... 57
Rear lid ... 58
Electric window opening and closing ... 60
Lights and visibility ... 61
Lights ... 61
Interior lights ... 66
Visibility ... 67
Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers ... 68
Rear vision mirrors ... 70
Seats and head restraints ... 71
Adjusting seats and head restraints ... 71
Seat functions ... 73
Transport and practical equipment ... 76
Practical equipment ... 76
Storing objects ... 81
Luggage compartment ... 82
Roof rack* ... 85
Heating and air conditioning ... 87
Heating and air conditioning ... 87
Heating ... 88
Air conditioning (manual)* ... 90
Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning) ... 93
Driving ... 96
Starting and stopping the engine ... 96
Brakes and brake servo systems ... 98
Manual gearbox ... 100
Automatic gearbox ... 100
Run-in and economical driving ... 104
Wading and driving off-road ... 107
Driver assistance systems ... 108
Braking and stability systems ... 108
Parking aid* ... 110
Cruise control* ... 111
Start-Stop* System ... 112
Towing bracket device ... 114
Driving the vehicle with a trailer ... 114
Towing bracket device ... 116

Advice ... 122
Care and maintenance ... 122
Accessories and modifications to the vehicle ... 122
Care and cleaning ... 123
Checking and refilling levels ... 129
Fuel ... 129
Engine compartment ... 132
Engine oil ... 135
Coolant ... 137
Brake fluid ... 139
Windscreen washer ... 139
Battery ... 140
Wheels and tyres ... 144
Wheels ... 144
Spare wheel ... 146
Tyre control systems ... 147
Winter service ... 148
Emergencies ... 149
Emergency equipment ... 149
Changing a wheel ... 150
Tyre repairs ... 154
Jump-starting ... 157
Towing the vehicle ... 159
Emergency locking and unlocking ... 161
Changing the wiper blades ... 162
Fuses and bulbs ... 163
Fuses ... 163
Changing bulbs ... 166
Changing front fog light bulbs ... 169
Changing bulbs for rear lights (in side panel) ... 169
Changing rear lights (in rear lid) ... 171
Changing bulb for the number plate light ... 173

Technical specifications ... 174
Technical specifications ... 174
Important information ... 174
Information on fuel consumption ... 175
Towing a trailer ... 176

Wheels 177
Engine data 178
Dimensions 186
Capacities 186

Index 187

Safety

Safe driving

Safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and consider for both your own safety and for your passengers' safety.

⚠ WARNING

- **This manual contains important information about the operation of the vehicle, both for the driver and the passengers. The other sections of the on-board documentation also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.**

Advice about driving

Before starting every trip

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

– Make sure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals are working properly.

– Check tyre pressure.

– Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.

– Make sure all luggage is secured ››› page 81.

– Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.

– Adjust front seat, head restraint and rear vision mirrors properly according to your size.

– Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the head restraints in the in-use position ››› page 10.

– Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.

– Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ››› page 24.

– Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position. ››› page 6.

– Fasten your seat belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly. ››› page 11.

What affects driving safety?

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected by any circumstance, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ››› ⚠, for this reason:

– Always pay attention to traffic and do not get distracted by passengers or telephone calls.

– Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).

– Observe traffic laws and speed limits.

– Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.

– When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.

– If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

⚠ WARNING

When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases.

Safety equipment

Never put your safety or the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the »

risk of injury. The following list includes most of the safety equipment in your SEAT:

- Three-point seat belts
- belt tension limiters for the front and rear side seats,
- Belt tensioners for the front seats
- Belt height adjustment for the front seats
- Front airbags
- Side airbags in the front seat backrests
- Side airbags in the rear seat backrests*
- Head-protection airbags
- Active front head restraints*
- “ISOFIX” anchor points for child seats in the rear side seats with the “ISOFIX” system,
- Height-adjustable front head restraints
- Rear head restraints with in-use position and non-use position
- Adjustable steering column

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of an accident. However, these safety systems can only be effective if you and your passengers are sitting in a correct position and use this equipment properly.

Safety is everyone's business!

Sitting position for vehicle occupants

Correct sitting position for driver

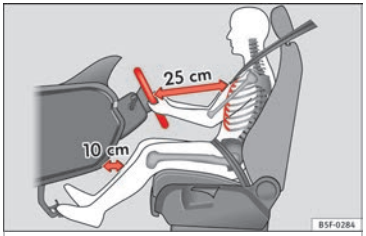

Fig. 1 The proper distance between driver and steering wheel

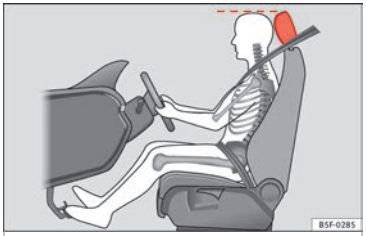

Fig. 2 Correct head restraint position for the driver.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the driver:

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the centre of your chest ››› **Fig. 1**.

– Move the driver seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled ››› ⚠.

– Ensure that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ››› **Fig. 2**.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› **page 11**.

– Keep both feet in the footwell so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

Adjustment of the driver seat ››› **page 72**.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the driver can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between the centre of**

the chest and the centre of the steering wheel ››› Fig. 1. If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.

- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury when the driver airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing his or her seat belt correctly.**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve optimal protection.**

Adjusting the steering wheel position

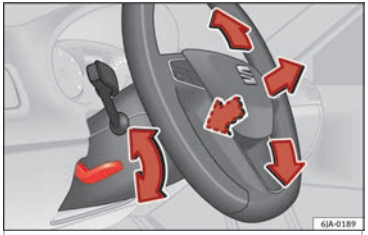

Fig. 3 Adjustable steering wheel: lever beneath steering column/safe distance from steering wheel.

The steering wheel can be adjusted vertically and horizontally.

– First adjust the position of the driver seat **››› page 71, Adjusting seats and head restraints**.

– Pull down the lever located below the steering wheel ››› Fig. 3 A.

– Adjust the steering wheel vertically or horizontally.

– Pull the lever upwards as far as it will go.

Correct sitting position for front passenger

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the front passenger:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible ››› ⚠.

– Move the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ››› **page 8**.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› **page 11**.

It is possible to deactivate the front passenger airbag in **exceptional circumstances** ››› **page 22**.

Adjusting the front passenger seat ››› **page 72**.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the front passenger can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your chest** »

and the dash panel. If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.

- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a specialised workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, out the window or on the seat. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger in events such as sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never travel with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the front passenger is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the seat backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**

Correct sitting position for passengers in the rear seats

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, passengers on the rear seat bench must consider the following:

– Sit up straight.

– Adjust the head restraint to the correct position ››› page 10.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten your seat belt securely ››› page 11.

– Use an appropriate child restraint system when you take children in the vehicle ››› page 24.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the passengers in the rear seats are not sitting properly, they could sustain severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the head restraint correctly in order to achieve maximum protection.**
- **Seat belts can only provide optimal protection when seat backrests are in an upright position and the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly. If passengers In the rear seats are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt increases.**

Correct adjustment of front seat head restraints

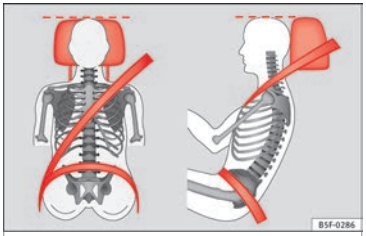

Fig. 4 Correctly adjusted head restraint as viewed from the front and the side.

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is, as far as possible, at the same level as the top of your head, or at the very least, at eye level ››› Fig. 4.

Adjusting the head restraints ››› page 72

Active head restraints*

Vehicle occupants are pressed into their seats during a rear end collision. The resulting body pressure on the seat backrest activates the active head restraint* on the front seat, which moves rapidly forwards and

upwards at the same time. This movement reduces the distance between the occupant's head and the head restraint, thus reducing the risk of injuries such as whiplash.

⚠ WARNING

- **Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries. An improper adjustment of the head restraints may cause death in an accident and increase the risk of suffering injuries during abrupt braking actions or unexpected manoeuvres.**
- **The head restraints must always be adjusted according to the height of the passenger.**

Note

The active head restraints* could also be triggered if a vehicle occupant applies a high level of pressure to the seat backrest (e.g. by "falling" back into the seat when entering the vehicle) or if pressure is applied to a front seat head restraint from the rear. This accidental activation is, however, not dangerous, as the active head restraints will return to the original position immediately and are thus once again ready.

Examples of incorrect sitting positions

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only when the belt webs are properly positioned. Incorrect sitting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect seat belt position. As the driver, you are responsible for all passengers, especially children.

– Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ››› ⚠.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but we would like to make you aware of this issue.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your seat backrest far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the surface of a seat.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the footwell.
- Never travel without wearing the seat belt.
- Do not allow anyone to travel in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Any incorrect sitting position increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position exposes the vehicle occupants to severe injuries if airbags are triggered, by striking a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. Before every trip, instruct your passengers to sit properly and to stay in this position during the trip** ››› page 6, Sitting position for vehicle occupants.

Correct adjustment of rear seat head restraints

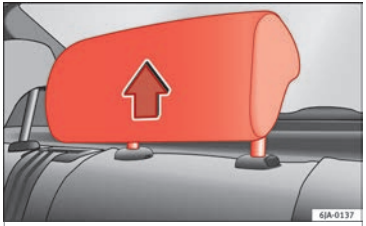

Fig. 5 Head restraints in the correct position.

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of passenger protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

Rear outer seat head restraints

– The rear outer seat head restraints have 4 positions.

– Three positions for **use** ››› Fig. 5. In these positions, the head restraints are used normally, and along with the rear seat belts, protect passengers in the rear seats.

– And one position for **non-use**.

– To fit the head restraints in position for use, pull on the edges with both hands in the direction of the arrow.

Centre rear head restraint*

– The centre head restraint only has two positions, **in-use** (head restraint up) and **non-use** (head restraint down).

⚠ WARNING

- **Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the head restraints are in the non-use position.**
- **Do not swap the centre rear head restraint with either of the outer seat rear head restraints. Risk of injury in case of an accident!**

ⓘ CAUTION

Note the instructions on the adjustment of the head restraints ››› page 72.

Pedal area

Pedals

– Ensure that you can always press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals unimpaired to the floor.

– Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.

– Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ››› ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a specialised dealership. Fasteners* for floor mats are fitted in the footwells.

If a brake circuit fails, the brake pedal must be pressed down thoroughly in order to stop the vehicle.

Wearing suitable shoes

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feeling for the pedals.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the pedals are obstructed, an accident may occur. Risk of serious injuries.**
- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.**
- **Never place objects in the driver footwell. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation. In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to operate the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal. Risk of accident!**

Seat belts

The reasons why we should wear seat belts

Number of seats

Your vehicle has **five** seats, two in the front and three in the rear. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

In some versions, your vehicle is approved **only** for four seats. Two front seats and two rear seats.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never transport more than the permitted amount of people in your vehicle.**
- **Every vehicle occupant must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system.**

Seat belt warning lamp*

The control lamp illuminates to remind the driver to fasten his seat belt.

Before starting the vehicle:

– Fasten your seat belt securely.

– Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.

– Protect children by using a child seat according to the child's height and weight.

The control lamp[1] on the instrument panel lights up if the driver or passenger has not fastened their belt when the ignition is switched on.

If, when starting to drive, speed surpasses 25 km/h (15 mph) approx. and no seat belts are worn or they are unfastened during the drive, a warning sound will be heard for a few seconds. The warning light will also flash .

The lamp goes out when the driver and passenger seat belts are fastened with the ignition switched on.

Seat belt protection

Fig. 6 Drivers with properly worn seat belts will not be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking

Properly worn seat belts hold the occupants in the proper position. They also help prevent uncontrolled movements that may result in serious injury and reduce the risk of being thrown out of the vehicle in case of an accident.

Vehicle occupants wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. In addition, the front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the releasing kinetic energy and consequently, the risk of injury. »

[1] Depending on the model version

This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown that wearing seat belts is an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival when involved in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some cases of head-on collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal or side collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off!

Safety instructions on using seat belts

– Always wear the seat belt as described in this section.

– Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.**
- **Fasten your seat belt before every trip - even when driving in town. Other vehicle occupants must also wear the seat belts at all times, otherwise they run the risk of being injured.**
- **The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.**
- **Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.**
- **Always keep both feet in the footwell in front of your seat as long as the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **The seat belt must never be twisted while it is being worn.**
- **The seat belt should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.**
- **Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belts, reducing their capacity to protect.**
- **The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, fastening rings or similar items to alter the position of the belt webbing.**
- **Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.**
- **Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a specialised workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.**
- **Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.**
- **The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly** **»» page 128.**

Head-on collisions and the laws of physics

Fig. 7 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently

Fig. 8 The unbelted passenger in the rear seat is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver wearing a seat belt

It is easy to explain how the laws of physics work in the case of a head-on collision: when a vehicle starts moving, a type of energy called “kinetic energy” is created both in the passengers and inside the vehicle.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and its passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be “absorbed” in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h (15 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the corresponding kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Because the vehicle occupants in our example are not restrained by seat belts, in the event of crashing against a wall, all of the occupants' kinetic energy will be absorbed solely by said impact.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a head-on collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ››› Fig. 7.

It is also important for rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently through the vehicle interior in an accident. Passengers in the rear seats who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ››› Fig. 8.

How to properly adjust your seatbelt

Fastening and unfastening your seat belt

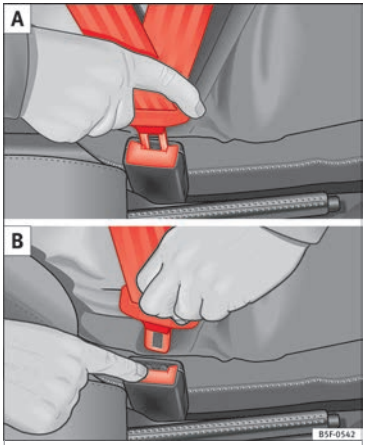

Fig. 9 Positioning and removing the seat belt buckle.

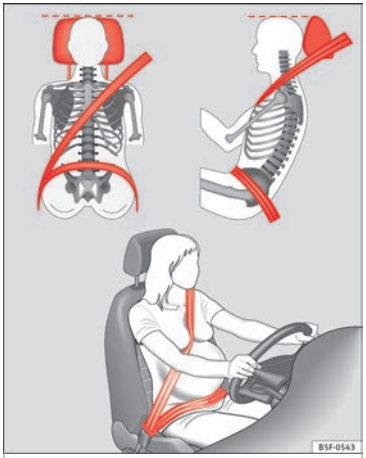

Fig. 10 Placing the seat belt in the shoulder and pelvis area for pregnant women.

Fasten your seat belt

The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the seat belt is not positioned correctly.

- Adjust the seat and head restraint correctly.
- To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ››› **Fig. 9 A**.
- Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic retractor on the shoulder strap. Full freedom of movement is permitted when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly. However, during sudden braking, during travel in steep areas or bends and during acceleration, the automatic retractor on the shoulder belt is locked.

The automatic belt retractors on the front seats are fitted with seat belt tensioners ››› page 15.

Seat belt release

- Press the red button on the belt buckle ››› **Fig. 9 B**. The latch plate is released and springs out ››› ⚠.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim is not damaged.

Positioning seat belts

Seat belts offer their maximum protection only when they are properly positioned.

The following features are available to adjust the seat belt in the shoulder region:

- belt height adjustment for the front seats.
- front seat height adjustment*.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **Never put the latch plate in the buckle of another seat. If you do this, the seat belt will not protect you properly and the risk of injury is increased.**
- **Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. If you do, you increase the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries.**
- **An incorrectly worn seat belt can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the torso ››› Fig. 10.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis ››› Fig. 10. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach, and always lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen.**
- **Always engage the retractor lock when you are securing a child seat in group 0, 0+ or 1 ››› page 24.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ››› page 12.**

Adjusting the seat belt height

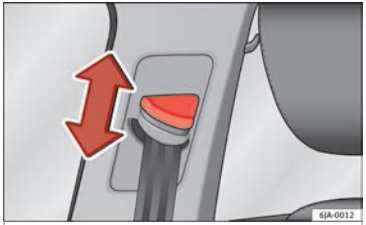

Fig. 11 Location of the belt height adjuster.

The seat belt adjuster for the front seats can be used to adjust the proper belt position at the shoulder.

– Press the upper part of the shoulder belt guide and hold it in this position ››› Fig. 11.

– Move the shoulder belt guide up or down until you have adjusted the seat belt ››› page 14.

– After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely.

Seat belt tensioners

How the seat belt tensioner works

During a frontal collision, the seat belts on the front seats are retracted automatically.

The seat belts for the occupants in the front seats are equipped with belt tensioners. Sensors will trigger the belt tensioners only during severe head-on, lateral and rear-end collisions and only if the seat belt is worn. This retracts and tightens the seat belts, reducing the forward motion of the occupants.

The seat belt tensioner can be triggered only once.

The seat belt tensioners will not be triggered in the event of a light frontal, side or rear collision, if the vehicle overturns or in situations where no large forces act on the front, side or rear of the vehicle.

Note

- **If the seat belt tensioners are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.**
- **The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Specialised workshops are familiar with these regulations, which are also available to you.**

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

The belt tensioners are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tensioners or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tensioners function incorrectly or may not function at all.

So that the effectiveness of the seat belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations, which are known to the specialised workshops, must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

- **Improper use or repairs not carried out by qualified mechanics increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. The belt tensioners may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tensioners or seat belts.**
- **The seat belt tensioner, seat belt and automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tensioners and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a specialised workshop only.**
- **The belt tensioners will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed if they have been activated.**

Airbag system

Brief introduction

Why wear a seat belt and assume the correct sitting position?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. Therefore, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety **»» page 11, The reasons why we should wear seat belts**.

The airbag inflates in a matter of seconds, so if you are not properly seated when the airbag is triggered, you may sustain fatal injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all vehicle occupants assume a correct sitting position while travelling.

Sharp braking before an accident may cause a passenger not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying

airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries on the occupant. This also applies to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors that will trigger an airbag are: the type of accident, the angle of collision and the speed of the vehicle.

Whether or not the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbags will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle involved in an accident, no matter how serious, is not a determining factor for the airbags to have been triggered.

⚠ WARNING

- **Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries.**
- **All vehicle occupants, including children, who are not properly belted can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt, or if you lean forward or to the side while travelling or assume an incorrect sitting position, there is a substantially increased risk of injury. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly** **››› page 11****.**
- **Always adjust the front seats properly.**

Description of airbag system

The airbag system mainly comprises (as per vehicle equipment):

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit)
- frontal airbags for driver and passenger,
- side airbags,
- curtain airbags,
- a control lamp on the dash panel **››› page 18**.
- key-operated switch for front passenger airbag,
- a control lamp for disabling/enabling the front passenger airbag.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag control lamp will illuminate for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

There is a fault in the system if the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on **››› page 18**,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

The airbag system is not triggered if:

- the ignition is switched off
- there is a minor frontal collision
- there is a minor side collision
- there is a rear-end collision
- the vehicle turns over.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly** **››› page 6, Sitting position for vehicle occupants****.**
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, during a** »

frontal collision the system might not trigger correctly or may fail to trigger at all.

Airbag activation

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system is only ready to function when the ignition is on.

In special accidents instances, several airbags may activate at the same time.

In the event of minor head-on and side collisions, rear-end collisions, overturning or rollover of the vehicle, airbags **do not activate**.

Activation factors

The conditions that lead to the airbag system activating in each situation cannot be generalised. Some factors play an important role, such as the properties of the object the vehicle hits (hard/soft), angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

Deceleration trajectory is key for airbag activation.

The control unit analyses the collision trajectory and activates the respective restraint system.

If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car.

The following airbags are triggered in serious head-on collisions

- Driver airbag.
- Front passenger front airbag

The following airbags are triggered in serious side-on collisions

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Curtain (head) airbag on the side of the accident.

In an accident with airbag activation:

- the interior lights switch on (if the interior light switch is in the courtesy light position);
- the hazard warning lights switch on;
- all doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is cut.

Control lamp for airbag and seat belt tensioner

The control lamp monitors all airbags and seat belt tensioners in the vehicle, including control units and wiring connections.

Monitoring of airbag and belt tensioner system

Both the airbag and belt tensioner systems operation is constantly monitored electronically. Each time the ignition is switched on, the control lamp illuminates for several seconds (self-diagnosis) and the instrument panel display* shows **AIRBAG/TENSIONER**.

The system must be checked when the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

In the event of a malfunction, the warning lamp stays on continuously. In addition, depending on the malfunction, a fault message appears on the instrument panel display for approximately 10 seconds and a short audible warning is given. In this event, you

should have a specialised workshop check the system immediately.

If any of the airbags are disabled by a Technical Service, the warning lamp flashes for several more seconds after verification and will turn off if there is no fault.

⚠ WARNING

- **If there is a malfunction, the airbag and belt tensioner system cannot properly perform its protective function.**
- **If a malfunction occurs, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the airbag system and belt tensioners may not be triggered, or may not be triggered correctly.**

Airbag overview

Front airbags

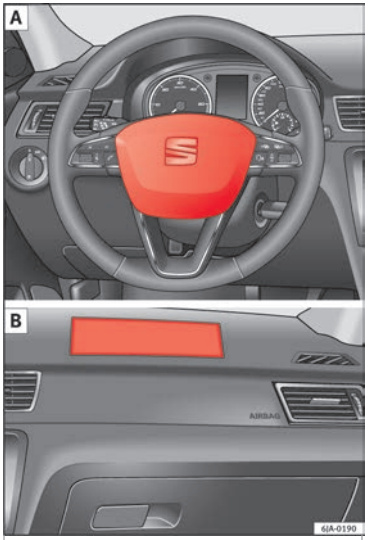

Fig. 12 Driver airbag in the steering wheel and front passenger airbag in the dash panel

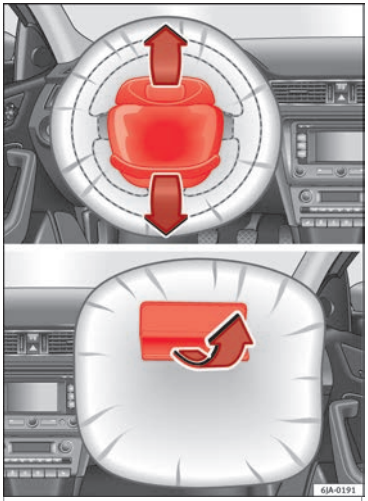

Fig. 13 Airbag covers reacting when the front airbags are triggered.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ››› **Fig. 12** A and the front passenger airbag is located in the dash panel ››› **Fig. 12** B. Airbags are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel and dashboard respectively when the driver and front passenger airbags are triggered ››› **Fig. 13**. The airbag covers remain »

connected to the steering wheel or the dash panel.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the driver and the front passenger additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. After the collision, the airbag deflates sufficiently to allow visibility.

⚠ WARNING

- **The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passenger, pets and objects.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**

Side airbags*

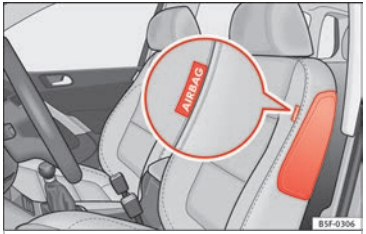

Fig. 14 Side airbag in driver seat.

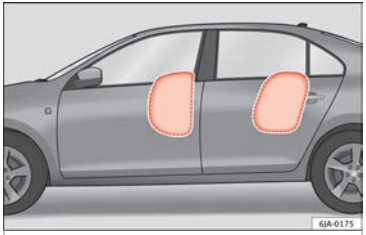

Fig. 15 Illustration of completely inflated side airbags on the left side of the vehicle.

The side airbags are located in the backrest cushions of the driver seat ››› **Fig. 14** and the front passenger seat as well as in the backrest of the side rear seats. The locations are identified by the text “AIRBAG” in the upper region of the backrests.

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers on the front seats to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, seat belts also hold the passengers on the front and rear side seats in a position where the side airbags can provide maximum protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts. Therefore, it is most important to properly wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ››› **page 11, The reasons why we should wear seat belts**.

⚠ WARNING

- **If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at a greater risk of injury if the side airbag system is triggered in an accident.**
- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**

- **Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.**
- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.**
- **Great forces, such as hard blows or kicks, must not be exerted upon the backrest bolster because the system may be damaged. In this case, the side airbags would not be triggered.**
- **Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over seats with side airbags unless the covers have been approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness.**
- **Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**
- **The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain (head) airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.**
- **In a side-on collision the side airbags will not work if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the interior panels have been removed.**
- **Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the loudspeakers in the door panels have been removed, unless the holes left by the loudspeakers have been closed properly.**
- **Always check that the openings are closed or covered if loudspeakers or other equipment are fitted inside the door panels.**
- **Any work carried out to the doors should be made in an authorised specialised workshop.**

Head-protection airbags*

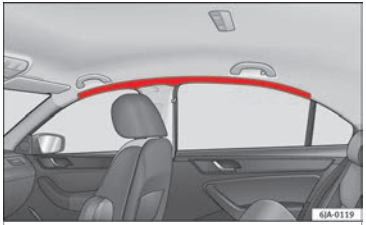

Fig. 16 Location of head-protection airbags.

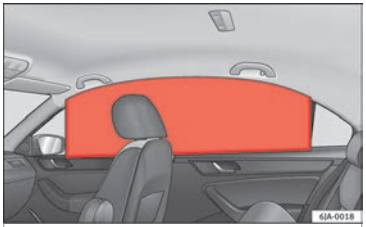

Fig. 17 Deployed head-protection airbags.

The head-protection airbags are located on both sides in the interior above the doors ››› **Fig. 16** and are identified with the text “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the head-protection airbag system gives the vehicle occupants additional protection for the head »

and upper body in the event of a severe side collision ››› page 20.

⚠ WARNING

- **In order for the head-protection airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **For safety reasons, the curtain airbag must be disabled in those vehicles fitted with a screen dividing the interior of the vehicle. See your technical service to make this adjustment.**
- **There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the rear seats and the deployment space of the head-protection airbags so that the head-protection airbag can deploy without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows**
- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Please, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **Any work on the head-protection airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.**
- **The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.**

Deactivating airbags

Disabling the front airbag

The disabling of airbags is only carried out in certain cases, i.e. if:

- a child seat is required in the front passenger seat with the child facing in the opposite direction to the direction of travel (in some countries, due to divergent legal requirements, facing in the direction of travel) ››› page 26;
- despite the driver seat being in the correct position, a minimum distance of 25 cm cannot be maintained between the centre of the steering wheel and the driver's torso,
- installation of special devices is required in the steering wheel area due to a physical disability,
- if you have special seats installed (e.g. an orthopaedic seat without side airbags).

The front passenger front airbag can be disabled using the switch ››› page 23.

We recommend that you contact an authorised SEAT dealer for the disabling of other airbags.

Airbag system control

The airbag system availability is controlled electronically, regardless of whether an airbag is disabled.

If an airbag was disabled using a diagnostics system:

- the airbag system warning lamp illuminates after switching on the ignition for about 4 seconds, and then flashes for about 12 seconds.

If the airbag has been disabled with the airbag switch on the side of the dash panel:

- the airbag control lamp will illuminate for about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,

• the airbag is disabled, signalled with the warning lamp **OFF** which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF**, placed in the centre part of the dash panel ››› **Fig. 18** ③.

Note

- **Follow the current legislation in your country regarding the disabling of airbags.**
- **At your authorised SEAT dealer you can find information on which vehicle airbags can be disabled.**

Front passenger front airbag switch

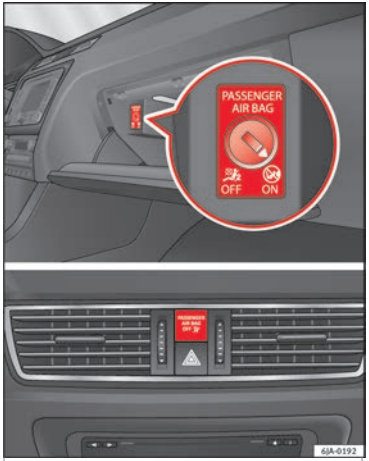

Fig. 18 Front passenger front airbag switch/warning lamp for disabling the front passenger airbag.

The switch disables only the front passenger front airbag.

Disabling the airbag

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the passenger side storage compartment.

– Insert the key into the slot of the switch for deactivating the front passenger airbag ››› **Fig. 18**. About 3/4 of the key should enter, as far as it will go.

– Then turn the key gently to the **OFF** position. Do not force it if you feel resistance, and make sure you have inserted the key fully.

– Check, with the ignition switched on, that the control lamp **OFF** illuminates with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre part of the dash panel.

Switching on the airbag

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the passenger side storage compartment.

– Insert the key into the slot of the switch for deactivating the front passenger airbag ››› **Fig. 18**. About 3/4 of the key should enter, as far as it will go.

– Then turn the key gently to the **ON** position. Do not force it if you feel resistance, and make sure you have inserted the key fully.

– Close the passenger side storage compartment.

– Check, with the ignition switched on, that the **OFF** control lamp does not illuminate, with the words **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the centre of the dash panel. »

Control lamp with the word PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF (front passenger airbag disabled)

If the front passenger front airbag is **disabled**, after switching on the ignition, the control lamp will illuminate for several seconds, then it will switch off for about 1 s and then switch on again.

If the control lamp is flashing, there is a fault in the disabling of the airbag system ››› ⚠. **Please go immediately to an Official Service.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver of the vehicle is responsible for disabling or switching on the airbag.**
- **Always switch off the ignition before disabling the front passenger airbag! Failure to do so could result in a fault in the airbag disabling system.**
- **Never leave the key in the airbag disabling switch as it could get damaged or enable or disable the airbag during driving.**
- **If the OFF (airbag disabled) control lamp flashes, the front passenger front airbag will not trigger in the event of an accident! Have the system immediately checked by an Official Service.**

Transporting children safety

Safety for children

Introduction

For safety reasons, as we have learned from accident statistics, we recommend that children under 12 years of age travel in the rear seats. Depending on their age, height and weight, children travelling in rear seats must use a child seat or a seat belt. For safety reasons, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat, behind the front passenger seat or in the centre back seat.

The physical laws involved and the forces acting in a collision apply also to children ››› page 13. But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce the risk of injuries, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the SEAT Original Accessories Programme, which includes systems for all ages made by “Peke” (not for all countries).

These systems have been especially designed and approved, complying with the ECE-R44. regulation.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and note ››› page 25.

We recommend you always carry the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag

Fig. 19 Passenger's side sun visor: airbag sticker.

Fig. 20 On the rear frame of the passenger side door: airbag sticker.

A sticker with important information about the passenger airbag is located on the passenger's sun visor and/or on the passenger side door frame. Read and always observe the safety information included in the following chapters:

- Safety distance with respect to the passenger airbag **››› page 16, Why wear a seat belt and assume the correct sitting position?**.
- Objects between the passenger and the passenger side airbag **››› ⚠ in Front airbags on page 20**.

The passenger side front airbag, when enabled, is a serious risk for a child that is facing backward since the airbag can strike the seat with such force that it can cause serious or fatal injuries. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.

Therefore we strongly recommend you to transport children on the rear seats. This is the safest location in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch **››› page 22**. When transporting children, use a child seat suitable for the age and size of each child **››› page 24**.

⚠ WARNING

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and project it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger front airbag has been disabled. Risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger front airbag must always be disabled ››› page 22. If the front passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest position.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to deactivate the airbag, the vehicle must be taken to a technical service.**
- **All vehicle occupants, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**
- **Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other vehicle occupants.**
- **If children assume an improper sitting position when the vehicle is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly important if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat** »

and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; as this could cause serious injury or even death.

- **A suitable child seat can protect your child!**
- **Never leave a child alone in the child seat or inside the vehicle because depending on the season, very high temperatures may be reached inside a parked vehicle, which could be fatal.**
- **Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child seat, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat** **››› page 26, Child seats.**

Child seats

Categorisation of child seats into groups

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

Child seats are subject to the regulation ECE-R 44. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation.

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (up to around 9 months)

Group 0+: Up to 13 kg (up to around 18 months)

Group 1: From 9 to 18 kg (up to around 4 years old)

Group 2: from 15 to 25 kg (up to approx. 7 years old)

Group 3: From 22 to 36 kg (over around 7 years old)

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R44 standard bear the test mark on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it).

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend you to always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

SEAT recommends you use child seats from the **Original Accessories Catalogue**. These child seats have been designed and tested for use in SEAT vehicles. You can find the right child seat for your model and age group at SEAT dealers.

⚠ WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats **››› page 25.**

Possible ways to secure child seats

You can secure a child seat to the rear seat or front passenger seat in the following ways:

- Child seats in groups **0 to 3** can be secured with a seat belt.
- Child seats for groups **0, 0+ and 1** can be fastened without seatbelts, using the “ISO-FIX” and Top Tether* system, using the “ISO-FIX” and Top Tether* securing rings **››› page 27**.

Category	Weight	Seat locations		
		Front passenger	Rear outer	Rear centre
Group 0	‹10 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 0+	‹13 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 1	9-18 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 2/3	15-36 kg	U*	U	U

U: Suitable for universal approved restraining systems for use in this age category (universal retention systems are those fitted using the adult seat belt).

*: Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible, as high as possible and always disable the airbag.

L: Suitable for retention systems using the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* anchors.

⚠ WARNING

- **When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats** **» page 25.**

Child seats fastened with the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* system

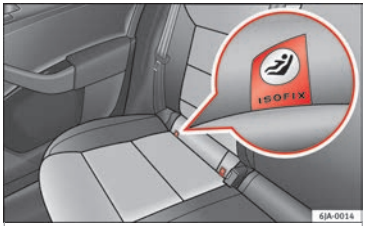

Fig. 21 ISOFIX securing rings.

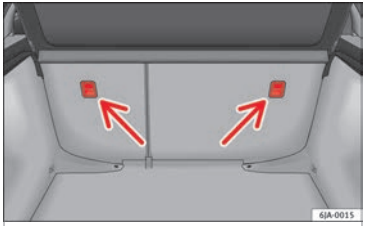

Fig. 22 Top Tether* securing ring.

Child seats with the “ISOFIX” or Top Tether* system can be secured quickly, easily and safely on the rear outer seats.

When removing or fitting the child seat, please be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions.

– Move the rear seat as far to the rear as it will go.

– Press the child seat onto the “ISOFIX” retaining rings until the child seat can be heard to engage. If the child seat is equipped with Top Tether* anchor points, secure it to the correspondent ring. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

– Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure.

Two “ISOFIX” retaining rings are fitted on each rear seat. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and, in others, they are secured to the rear floor. Access to the “ISOFIX” rings is between the rear seat backrest and the seat cushioning. The Top Tether* rings are located at the rear of the backrests of the rear seats (behind the seat backrest or in the boot).

Child seats with the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* attachment system are available from Technical Services.

⚠ WARNING

- **The retaining rings are designed only for use with “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* system child seats.**
- **Never secure other child seats that do not have the “ISOFIX” or Top Tether* system, or retaining belts or objects to the fastening rings - this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.**
- **Ensure that the child seat is secured correctly using the “ISOFIX” and Top Tether* securing rings.**

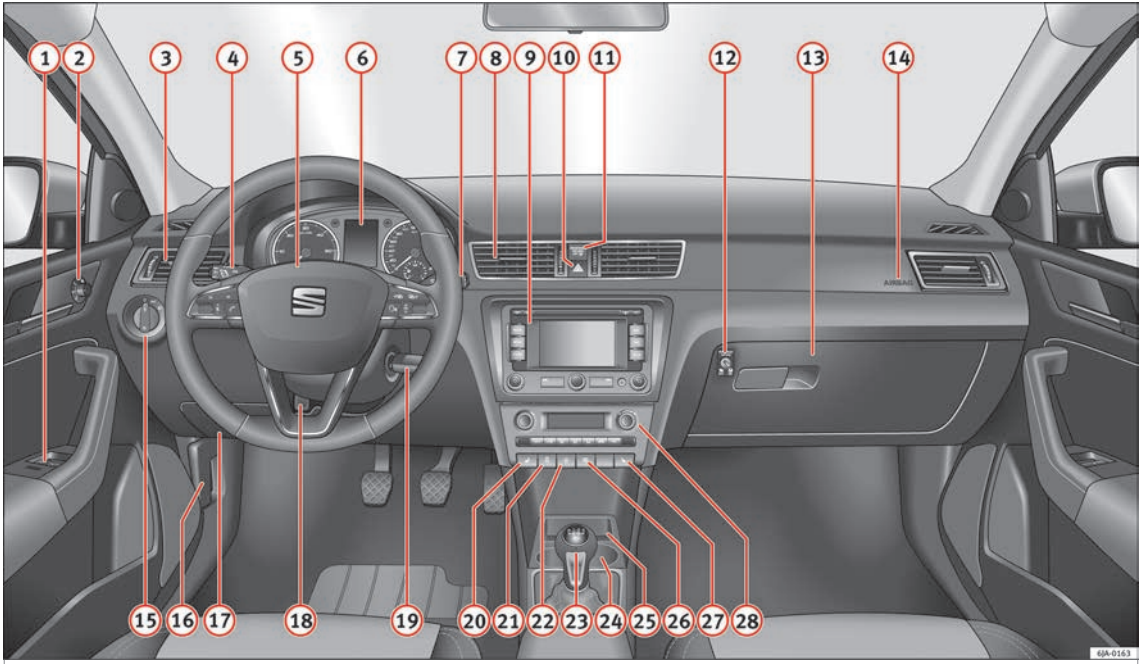

Fig. 23 Interior.

Operation

Controls and displays

Overview

1 Electric window controls 60
2 Control for adjusting electric exterior mirrors 70
3 Air outlets 88
4 Multifunction switch lever:
– Turn signals, headlights, parking lights, headlight flasher 63
– Cruise control system 111
5 Steering wheel:
– With horn
– With the driver front airbag 19
– With controls for audio, navigation system and telephone 46
6 General instrument panel: instruments and warning lamps 29
7 Multifunction switch lever:
– Multifunction display 39
– Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers 69
8 Air outlets 88
9 Depending on the equipment:
– Audio system
– Navigation system
10 Hazard warning lights switch 65
11 Control lamp for front passenger airbag deactivated warning lamp .. 23
12 Front passenger airbag switch 23
13 Passenger side storage compartment 76
14 Front passenger airbag 19
15 Light switch and main lights range control 61, 62
16 Bonnet release lever 133
17 Fuse compartment 164
18 Steering column adjustment lever . 7
19 Ignition lock 97
20 Driver seat heating control 73
21 ASR switch 108
22 Central lock button 56
23 Depending on the equipment:
– Gear lever (manual gearbox) 100
– Selector lever (automatic gearbox) 101
24 Depending on the equipment:
– Drink holder 77
– Ashtray holder 78
25 Glove compartment/storage compartment 76
26 Heated rear window control 67
27 Passenger seat heating control 73
28 Depending on the equipment:
– Heating controls 88
– Air conditioning controls 90
– Climatronic controls 93

Note

The location of the controls of right-hand drive cars differs slightly from the location shown here ››› Fig. 23. However, the symbols correspond to the respective controls.

Instruments and warning lamps

Dash

General instrument panel

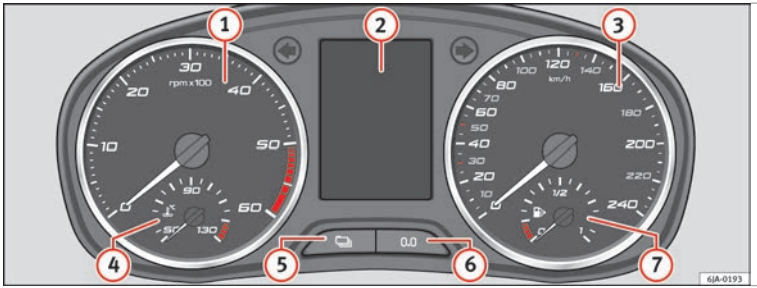

Fig. 24 General dash panel.

1. Rev counter ››› page 31
2. Digital display:
   - with trip counter ››› page 32
   - with service interval display ››› page 45
   - with digital clock ››› page 32
   - with multifunction display ››› page 39
   - with informative digital display ››› page 43
   - with outside temperature indicator ››› page 40
3. Speedometer ››› page 31
4. Coolant temperature indicator ››› page 31
5. Control for selecting the mode:
   - adjust hours/minutes
   - activate/deactivate according to speed in mph or km/h respectively
   - service intervals – show the days and kilometres (miles) remaining
6. Switch for:
   - delete trip counter
   - reset the service intervals
   - adjust hours/minutes
   - activate/deactivate the selected mode
7. Fuel reserve indicator ››› page 31

⚠ WARNING

- **Always keep your attention on driving! As the driver, you have the full responsibility for the safety of traffic.**
- **Never use the instrument panel controls when the vehicle is in motion. Do so only when the vehicle is stopped!**

Rev counter

The red part of the rev counter scale (1) ››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30 marks the area where the engine control unit begins to limit the engine speed. The engine control unit is responsible for reducing the revs to a safe limit.

Before the needle reaches the red zone change up into a higher gear, or move the selector lever of the automatic gearbox to D.

In order to drive at an optimum RPM, follow the gear change indications ››› page 32.

For the sake of the environment

Changing to higher gears in advance helps to reduce fuel consumption and noise levels, helps to protect the environment and benefits both the useful life and the reliability of the engine.

Speedometer

Speed warning

An audible warning will be heard when 120 km/h (75 mph) is exceeded. If the speed falls below this limit, the audible warning switches off.

Note

This function is only valid for certain countries.

Coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge (4) ››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30 only works when the ignition is switched on.

Damage to the engine can be avoided by observing the indications regarding the temperature zones.

Engine cold

If the needle is still on the left of the scale, the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, hard acceleration and subjecting the engine to high loads.

Operating temperature zone

When the needle has reached the central part of the scale, this means the engine has reached operating temperature. Running the engine at full throttle and the high temperatures involved can cause the needle to be positioned in the zone on the right.

CAUTION

The additional headlights and other parts placed in front of the fresh air inlets reduce the effect of engine cooling. With high outside temperatures and engine speeds a risk becomes present of the engine overheating. ››› page 35, Coolant level and temperature

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge (7) ››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30 operates only when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of approx. 55 litres. When the needle reaches the reserve area, the ⛽ ››› page 37 warning symbol illuminates on the general instrument panel and an audible warning can be heard.

CAUTION

Never completely empty the tank! An irregularity in the fuel supply system can cause irregularities when the engine is running. Unburned fuel can reach the exhaust gas system, which can cause deterioration of the catalytic converter.

Note

Some vehicles come fitted with the fuel gauge on the general instrument panel.

Trip counter*

Daily trip counter (trip)

The daily trip counter indicates the distance that has been covered since the last time the function was reset in 100 metre sections.

In order to reset the daily distance covered keep the button (6) ››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30 pressed down.

Odometer

The odometer indicates the total number of kilometres (or mileage) that the vehicle has covered until now.

Fault indication

In the event of a fault the word **Error** will be permanently displayed on the informative display. Please take the vehicle to a specialised Technical Service to solve this fault.

Note

In vehicles equipped with an informative display, if the indicator of the second speed in mph or in kph are activated respectively, this speed will be displayed in place of the odometer.

Digital clock

The clock is set using the buttons (5) to (6) ››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30.

Select the indication you want to change with button (5) and make the adjustment with button (6).

In vehicles equipped with an informative display this can be reset from the menu, **Time** ››› page 44.

Recommended gear display

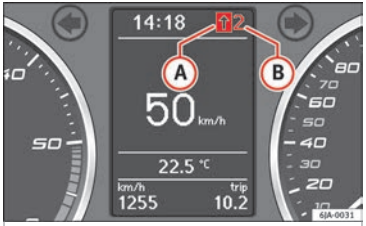

Fig. 25 Recommended gear display.

The general instrument panel display indicates the engaged gear (A) ››› Fig. 25.

In order to optimally reduce the fuel consumption, the recommended gear is displayed on the screen.

If the control unit analysis decides that a gear change is required, an arrow appears on the display (A). This arrow can point up or down indicating whether a lower or higher gear is recommended.

Simultaneously, the gear currently engaged is indicated (B) in the place of the recommended gear.

CAUTION

However, the driver is always responsible for choosing the appropriate gear for each situation, (i.e. when overtaking).

Control lamps

Summary

The control lamps indicate certain functions or faults that may be accompanied by an audible warning.

When the ignition is switched on some of the warning lamps illuminate for several seconds for the purpose of the control systems of the vehicle. These warning lamps must switch off several seconds after the ignition is switched on.

(P)	Handbrake	››› page 33

	Brake system	››› page 33
	Fasten your seat belt	››› page 34
	Alternator	››› page 34
	Door open	››› page 34
	Engine oil (red or yellow colour)	››› page 34
	Coolant temperature/level (red or blue colour)	››› page 35
	Power steering	››› page 35
	Electronic stability control (ESC)	››› page 35
	Traction control system (ASR)	››› page 35
	Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	››› page 36
	Rear fog light	››› page 36
	Bulb fault	››› page 36
	Emission control system	››› page 36
	Glow plug system (diesel engines)	››› page 36
EPC	Engine electronics control (petrol engines)	››› page 36
	Particulate filter (diesel engines)	››› page 37
	Fuel reserve	››› page 37
	Airbag system	››› page 37
	Tyre pressure	››› page 38
	Liquid level in the window washer system	››› page 38
	Turn signals (left/right)	››› page 38
	Fog lights	››› page 38
	Cruise speed	››› page 38
	Selector lever lock	››› page 38
	Main beams	››› page 38

⚠ WARNING

- **Failure to observe control lamps and warning messages can result in serious personal injuries or damage to your vehicle.**
- **The engine compartment is a dangerous area. Carrying out work in the engine compartment, i.e. checking and filling service liquids, can lead to injury, scalding, burns and fires. Therefore the corresponding warnings must always be observed ››› page 132, Engine compartment.**

Handbrake

If the warning lamp lights up, the handbrake is applied. Additionally, driving the vehicle at speeds exceeding 6 km/h (4 mph) for at least 3 seconds produces an audible warning.

The informative display indicates:

Release the handbrake!

Brake system

The warning lamp illuminates if the brake fluid level is too low or if there is a fault in the ABS system.

The informative display indicates:

Brake fluid Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the level of the brake fluid
››› page 139

⚠ WARNING

- **The following indications must be taken into account when opening the engine compartment to check the brake fluid** **›› page 132, Engine compartment.**
- **If the warning lamp illuminates together with the warning lamp** **›› page 36, Anti-lock system (ABS)****, , stop the vehicle! Go to a technical service.**
- **A fault in the brake system or in the Anti-lock brake system (ABS) can lead to longer braking distances – Risk of accident!**

Fastening seat belts

After switching on the ignition, the warning lamp illuminates to instruct the driver or front passenger to fasten their seat belt. The warning lamp switches off when the driver or front passenger fastens their seat belt **›› page 11**.

Alternator

If the control lamp is illuminated while the engine is running, the battery is not charging.

Go to a technical service. Have the car's electrical equipment inspected.

CAUTION

Additionally, if the warning lamp lights up while driving, the warning lamp also lights up (cooling system fault). Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine – Risk of engine damage!

Door open

If the control lamp, lights up, one of the doors, the rear lid or the bonnet is open.

Engine oil

The control lamp flashes red (oil pressure low)

The informative display indicates:

Oil pressure. Switch off the engine! Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level **›› page 136**

If the symbol flashes although the oil level is correct, **do not drive on**. Do not even run the engine at idle speed!

Go to a technical service.

The control lamp lights up yellow (insufficient oil level)

The informative display indicates:

Check the oil level!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level **›› page 136**

If the bonnet remains open for more than 30 seconds, the warning lamp switches off. If the engine oil is not refilled, the warning lamp illuminates again after 100 km (62 miles).

The control lamp flashes yellow (oil level sensor faulty)

The informative display indicates:

Oil sensor. Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, The warning lamp flashes various times after the ignition is switched on and an audible warning is given.

Go to a technical service.

Coolant level and temperature

If the warning lamp (blue) is lit up, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature[1]. Avoid high engine speeds, hard acceleration and subjecting the engine to high loads.

If the warning lamp (red) is lit up or flashing, the coolant temperature is too high or its level is too low.

The informative display indicates:

Check coolant! Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, check the coolant level ››› page 138 and refill if necessary ››› page 138.

If the coolant is situated in the prescribed area, the high temperature may be due to a fault in the cooling system fan. Check the radiator fan fuse and replace it if necessary ››› page 165, Changing fuses in the engine compartment.

If the warning lamp (red) remains lit up, despite both the coolant level and the radiator fan fuse being in correct condition, **stop the vehicle!**

Go to a technical service.

[1] This does not apply to vehicles equipped with an informative display.

WARNING

- **Take care when opening the coolant reservoir. When the engine is warm or hot, the system is pressurised – Danger of burns! Wait for the engine to cool before opening the cover.**
- **Do not touch the fan. The fan can switch on automatically regardless of whether the ignition is switched on.**

Power steering !

If the ! warning lamp is illuminated, there is a fault in the power steering.

The power steering system functions with reduced power steering effect.

Go to a technical service.

Stability Control (ESC)

If the control lamp flashes, the ESC is working.

If the warning lamp illuminates on ignition, the ESC system may have switched off due to technical reasons. Turn off the ignition and turn it on again. Upon switching on the ignition again, if the warning lamp has switched off, this means the ESC is functioning correctly again.

If the warning lamp is illuminated there is a fault in the ESC.

The informative display indicates:

Report No.: electronic stability control (ESC)

or

Report No.: Traction control system (ASR)

Go to a technical service.

Further information ››› page 108, Stability system (ESC).

Note

If the battery is disconnected and connected again, the yellow warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. This warning lamp must switch off after covering a short distance.

Traction control system (ASR)

If the control lamp flashes, the ASR is working.

If the warning lamp illuminates on ignition, the TCS system may have switched off due to technical reasons. Turn off the ignition »

and turn it on again. Upon switching on the ignition again, if the warning lamp has switched off, this means the TCS is functioning correctly again.

If the warning lamp remains illuminated, there is a fault in the TCS.

The informative display indicates:

Report No.: Traction control system (ASR)

Go to a technical service.

Further information **>>> page 109, Traction control system (ASR)**.

Anti-lock system (ABS)

If the warning lamp is illuminated, there is a fault in the ABS.

The informative display indicates:

ABS fault

The brake system alone is operational in the vehicle, without ABS.

Go to a technical service.

WARNING

- **If the warning lamp illuminates together with the >>> page 33 warning lamp, , stop the vehicle! Go to a technical service.**
- **A fault in the Anti-lock brake system (ABS) can lead to longer braking distances – Risk of accident!**

Rear fog light

The control lamp lights up when the rear fog light is switched on **>>> page 64**.

Bulb fault

The control lamp lights up when there is a fault in a bulb:

- for several seconds after switching on the ignition,
- When connecting a faulty bulb

This is indicated on the informative display, e.g.:

Check the front right dipped beam headlight!

Note

The rear side lights and number plate light contain several bulbs. The control lamp lights up only when there is a fault in all the number plate bulbs or side light bulbs (of a combined tail light). Therefore it is advisable to regularly check the bulb operation.

Emission control system

If the warning lamp is lit up, there is a fault in the emission system. The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program.

Go to a technical service.

Preheating (diesel engines)

When you switch on the ignition, the warning lamp lights up. The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

If the warning lamp **does not illuminate** or **if it does not switch off**, there is a fault in the glow plug system.

If the warning lamp starts to **flash** while driving, there is a fault in the engine power control electronic system. The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program.

Go to a technical service.

Engine management system EPC (petrol engines)

If the EPC warning lamp is illuminated, there is a fault in the engine management system. The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program.

Go to a technical service.

Particulate filter (diesel engines)

The particulate filter eliminates soot from emissions. The particles accumulate in the filter where they are normally burned off.

If the warning lamp is illuminated, the filter is obstructed by soot.

In order for the filter to clean itself (if the traffic conditions ››› so permit) it is essential to drive for at least 15 minutes (or until the warning lamp switches off) with 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: position S) at a minimum speed of 60 km/h (37 mph) with the engine speed between 1,800-2,500 rpm.

The warning lamp switches off once the filter has been successfully cleaned.

If the cleaning process is not successful, the warning lamp does not switch off and the warning lamp starts to flash.

The informative display indicates:

Diesel particulate filter. Instruction Manual!

The engine control unit allows driving to continue in an emergency program. When switching the ignition off and on again, the warning lamp also illuminates.

Go to a technical service.

WARNING

- **The particulate filter attains very high temperatures. Therefore, do not park the vehicle in places where the exhaust pipe could come into contact with dry grass or with highly-flammable materials. Risk of fire!**

CAUTION

While the warning lamp is lit up, the fuel consumption is high, and in certain conditions, the engine power is reduced.

Note

- **In order for the particulate filter to burn off soot in a correct manner, avoid carrying out frequent short journeys.**
- **Using diesel fuel with a high sulphur count can considerably reduce the useful life of the particulate filter. The specialised service provides information about the countries where fuel with a high sulphur content is used.**

Fuel reserve

The warning lamp illuminates when approximately only 7 litres of fuel remain in the tank

The informative display indicates:

Refuel! Fuel range...km...(miles)

Note

The message on the display switches off only after refuelling and carrying out a short journey.

Airbag system

If the warning lamp is lit up, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The informative display indicates:

Airbag fault!

The airbag system availability is controlled electronically, regardless of whether an airbag is disabled.

If the front airbag, side airbag, head protection airbag or the belt tensioner are disabled using the diagnostics system:

- After switching on the ignition, the warning lamp illuminates for about 4 seconds and flashes for another 12 seconds.

The informative display indicates:

Airbag/belt tensioner disabled! »

If the front passenger airbag has been disabled with the airbag switch located in the storage compartment side:

- When the ignition is turned on, the warning lamp illuminates for about 4 seconds.
- The airbag is disabled, signalled with the warning lamp **OFF** which lights up with the word **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** placed in the centre part of the dash panel ››› Fig. 18 ››› page 23.

WARNING

When there is a fault in the airbag system, have an inspection carried out by an Authorised Service. Otherwise the airbags may fail to trigger in an accident.

Tyre pressure monitoring system* (!)

If the (!) warning lamp illuminates, the pressure in one of the tyres has decreased significantly. Check and adjust the pressure of all the tyres ››› page 144.

If the (!) warning lamp flashes, there is a fault in the system.

Go to a technical service.

Further information ››› page 147, Tyre pressure*.

Note

If the battery is disconnected the warning lamp (!) lights up when the ignition is switched on. This warning lamp must switch off after covering a short distance.

Windscreen washer fluid level

If the warning lamp illuminates, the level of windscreen washer fluid in the tank is very low. Fill the windscreen washer fluid ››› page 139, Windscreen washer.

The informative display indicates:

Refill windscreen washer fluid!

Turn signals

Depending on the position of the turn signal lever the left warning lamp on the left or right flashes.

If there is a turn signal fault, the warning lamp flashes at approximately double the normal speed.

All the turn signals flash in addition to both warning lamps when the hazard warning lights are switched on.

Further information ››› page 63, Turn signal and main beam lever.

Fog lights

The control lamp lights up when the fog lights are switched on ››› page 64.

Cruise speed

The warning lamp illuminates when the cruise control is switched on (cruise speed) ››› page 111.

Selector lever lock

If the control lamp illuminates, press the brake pedal. This is necessary when you require the automatic gearbox selector lever to move out of the positions **P** or **N** ››› page 103.

Main beams

The warning lamp lights up with the main beam headlights or when the headlights are flashed ››› page 63.

Information system

Multi-function display* (on board computer)

Introduction

The multifunction display can only be operated when the ignition is switched on. When the ignition is switched on the last function selected before it was switched off is displayed.

The multifunction display data is shown on the screen ››› Fig. 26 ››› page 39.

In vehicles fitted with an informative display ››› page 43 the system can be adjusted so that certain data is not shown.

⚠ WARNING

Always keep your attention on driving! As the driver, you have the full responsibility for the safety of traffic.

ⓘ Note

- **If the second speed in mph (km/h) is displayed, the current speed in km/h (mph) is not displayed on the screen.**

Memory

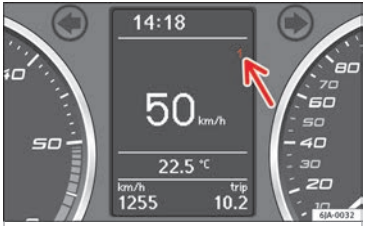

Fig. 26 Multifunction display.

The multifunction display has two automatic memories. The selected memory is displayed on the screen ››› Fig. 26.

The current journey data (memory 1) is always displayed when the number **1** appears on the display. When number **2** appears on the display, the total distance travelled is shown (memory 2).

Depending on the equipment package, the memory is selected by:

- briefly pressing the Ⓑ button on the lever ››› Fig. 27 ››› page 40, *or by*
- briefly pressing the right-hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel **OK** ① ››› Fig. 28.

Current journey memory (memory 1)

The current journey memory collects data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is continued **within two hours** of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to the existing trip recorder memory. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**.

Total distance travelled memory (memory 2)

The total distance travelled memory collects journey data from any number of individual journeys up to a maximum of 19 hours and 59 minutes and 1999 km or until 99 hours and 59 minutes and 9999 km in cars with an informative display. The memory will automatically be deleted if one of the named values is reached, resetting the data collected.

Unlike the current journey memory, this memory is not deleted, even when the ignition is switched off for more than 2 hours.

ⓘ Note

After disconnecting the battery, all the values stored in memories 1 and 2 are deleted.

Operation

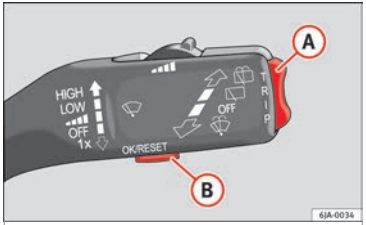

Fig. 27 Multifunction display: controls.

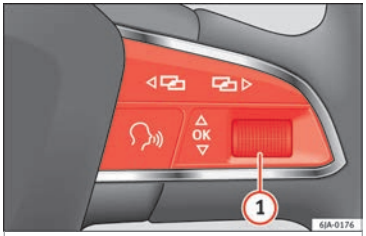

Fig. 28 Multifunction steering wheel: controls.

The button to change the functions (A) ››› **Fig. 27** and the button to delete the memory (B) are located on the window wiper lever.

Selecting a memory

Depending on the equipment package:

– Briefly press switch (B) ››› **Fig. 27** on the lever.

– Briefly press the right-hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel **OK** (1) ››› **Fig. 28**.

Selecting functions

Depending on the equipment package:

– Briefly press the rocker switch (A) ››› **Fig. 27** up or down. This displays the multifunction display functions in consecutive order on the screen.

– Turn the right-hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel (1) ››› **Fig. 28**. This displays the multifunction display functions in consecutive order on the screen.

Resetting

– Select the required memory.

Depending on the equipment package:

– Keep switch (B) ››› **Fig. 27** on the lever pressed.

– Keep the right-hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel **OK** (1) ››› **Fig. 28** pressed.

This way the following values of the selected memory are reset:

- the average fuel consumption
- journey distance covered
- average speed
- duration of the journey

Multifunction display data

Outside temperature

The display indicates the outside temperature.

At temperatures below +4 °C (+39°F), the snowflake symbol is also displayed (frozen road surface warning symbol) and an audible warning is given. When rocker switch (A) ››› **Fig. 27** on the lever is pressed or the right-hand thumbwheel (1) ››› **Fig. 28** is turned, the last function will be displayed.

Journey duration

The display shows the time you have covered since the memory was last reset. If you wish to measure the duration of a journey from a specific moment, the memory must be deleted ››› **page 40**.

The maximum time indicated by the two memories is 19 hours 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes for vehicles fitted with an informative display. The memory is reset if this value is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption

Current fuel consumption is indicated on the display in litres/100 km (miles)[1]. You can adapt your driving style to the required consumption with the assistance of this indicator.

The consumption is displayed in litres per hour while the vehicle is stopped or at idling speed[2].

Average fuel consumption

The display shows the average fuel consumption in litres/100 km[1] calculated since the memory was last reset ››› page 39.

If you wish to measure the average fuel consumption for a specific period, the memory must first be deleted ››› page 40. While driving the first 300 m after deleting the memory this value is not shown on the display.

The value is updated regularly while the vehicle is in motion.

Operating range

The approximate operating range is indicated in kilometres (miles) on the display. It shows how far the vehicle can travel with the available fuel using the same driving conditions as a reference.

The operating range is calculated in sections of 10 kilometres (miles). When the fuel gauge enters the reserve zone, the operating range is displayed in steps of 5 kilometres.

The operating range is calculated based on the fuel consumption during the last 50 kilometres (miles). The operating range increases when driving in a more economical manner.

When the memory is reset (after disconnecting the battery), the operating range is calculated with a 10 litres per 100 km consumption and adjusts to represent the current driving style.

Distance

The display shows the distance you have covered since the memory was last reset ››› page 39. If you wish to measure the duration of a journey from a specific moment, the memory must be deleted ››› page 40.

The maximum value for both memories is 1999 km (miles), or 9999 km (miles) in vehicles fitted with an informative display. The memory is reset if this value is exceeded.

Average speed

The display shows the average speed in km/h (mph) calculated from the last time the memory was reset ››› page 39. If you wish to measure the average speed for a specific period, the memory must first be deleted ››› page 40.

While driving the first 300 m after deleting the memory, this value is not shown on the display.

The value is updated regularly while the vehicle is in motion.

Driving speed

The current driving speed, the same as indicated on the speedometer, is shown on the display (3) ››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30.

Oil temperature

If the oil temperature is lower than +50 °C (+122 °F) or if a fault appears on the oil temperature control, in place of the temperature indication, the sign – –.– is shown. »

[1] The indication of consumption is given in kms (miles)/litres in models for certain countries.

[2] The indication of the consumption when the vehicle is stationary is given in – –.– km/litre in models for certain countries.

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely only on the outside temperature indicator to verify whether the road surface is frozen. This is because with an outside temperature of +4 °C (+39 °F) ice can form on the road - Warning of frozen road surface!

Speed warning

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stopped

Depending on the equipment package:

– Press button (A) ››› Fig. 27 on the lever to select **Speed warning**.

– Press button (B) on the lever to activate the possibility of adjusting the speed limit.

– Press button (A) on the lever to select the desired speed limit, i.e. 50 km/h. The speed can be adjusted in steps of 5 km/h.

– Press button (B) on the lever to confirm the selected speed or wait several seconds until the adjustment is automatically stored.

or

– Turn the right-hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel (1) ››› Fig. 28 and select **Speed warning**.

– Press the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel to activate the possibility of adjusting the speed limit.

– Turn the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel to adjust the desired speed, i.e. 50 km/h. The speed can be adjusted in steps of 5 km/h.

– Press the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel to confirm the selected speed or wait several seconds until the adjustment is automatically stored.

Adjust the speed limit while driving

Depending on the equipment package:

– Press button (A) ››› Fig. 27 on the lever to select **Speed warning**.

– Drive at the desired speed, i.e. 50 km/h (31 mph).

– Press button (B) on the lever to set the current driving speed as the speed limit. If you want to change the speed limit, this will be regulated in 5 km/h (mph) intervals (i.e. the speed set at 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

– Press button (B) on the lever once again to confirm the selected speed or wait several seconds until the adjustment is automatically stored.

or

– Turn the right-hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel (1) ››› Fig. 28 and select **Speed warning**.

– Drive at the desired speed, i.e. 50 km/h (31 mph).

– Press the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel to set the current driving speed as the speed limit. If you want to change the speed limit, this will be regulated in 5 km/h (mph) intervals (i.e. the speed set at 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

– Press the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel once again to confirm the selected speed or wait several seconds until the adjustment is automatically stored.

Changing or resetting the speed limit

Depending on the equipment package:

– Press button (A) ››› Fig. 27 on the lever to select **Speed warning**.

– Press button (B) to reset the speed limit.

– Press the button, (B) again to activate the possibility of adjusting the speed limit.

or

– Turn the right-hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel (1) ››› Fig. 28 and select **Speed warning**.

– Keep the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel pressed to reset the speed limit.

– Press the thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel once again to activate the possibility of changing the speed limit.

If the indicated speed is exceeded at any time, an audible warning is given. The message **Speed warning** appears simultaneously on the display with the imputed speed limit.

The speed limit stays in the memory even after switching the ignition off and on.

MAXI DOT* (Informative display)

Introduction

The informative display informs about the **current operational status of your vehicle.** Additionally, the screen also displays information for the radio, the multifunction display, the telephone, the navigation system, the devices connected to the MDI input and the automatic gearbox ››› page 100.

⚠ WARNING

Always keep your attention on driving! As the driver, you have the full responsibility for the safety of traffic.

Main menu

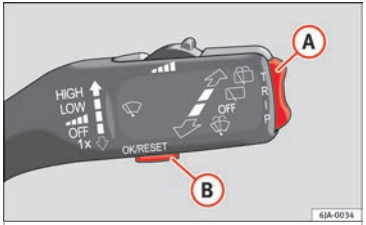

Fig. 29 Windscreen wiper lever: informative display controls.

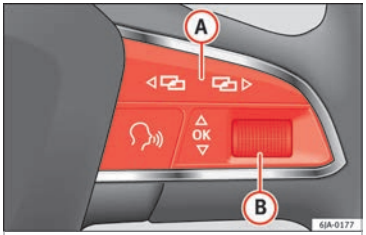

Fig. 30 Multifunction steering wheel: controls on the steering wheel.

Depending on the equipment package:

– The **Main menu** is enabled by keeping rocker switch (A) ››› Fig. 29 on the multifunction lever pressed.

– The menu options can be selected with button (A). Briefly press the button, (B) to display the selected information.

or

– The **Main menu** is enabled by pressing buttons (A) ››› Fig. 30 on the multifunction steering wheel.

– The menu options can be selected using thumbwheel (B) on the multifunction steering wheel. Briefly press thumbwheel (B) on the multifunction steering wheel to display the selected information.

The following options can be selected:

- **MFD** ››› page 39
- **Audio** ››› Booklet Audio system Instruction Manual
- **Navigation** ››› Booklet Navigation system Instruction Manual
- **Telephone** ››› Booklet Audio system instructions manual or ››› Booklet Navigation system instruction manual
- **Vehicle status** ››› page 44
- **Settings** ››› page 44

The **Audio** and **Navigation** options are only displayed when these factory-fitted systems are switched on.

Note

• If the multifunction display is not operated during 10 seconds, the menu automatically returns to one of the higher levels.

Settings

You can make certain adjustments using the informative display. The current values are displayed directly in their respective places above and below the line.

The following items can be selected:

- **Language**
- **MFD data**
- **Time**
- **Winter tyres**
- **Units**
- **Second speed**
- **Inspec. Service**
- **Factory settings**
- **Back**

Select the option **Back** to return to the superior menu level.

Language

Here the language used to display the warning and information texts can be selected.

MFD data

Here certain data shown on the multifunction display can be switched on or off.

Time

In this menu you can set, the time, the display format (24 or 12 hours) and changes from winter to summer time.

Winter tyres

The speed at which an audible warning is given can be adjusted here. This function can be used with winter tyres, whose maximum permitted speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle.

When exceeding the maximum speed the following is shown on the display:

Winter tyres max speed ... km/h ... (mph)

Units

The units of measure for temperature, consumption and journey distances can be set here.

Second speed

The second speed can be activated/deactivated in mph or km/h respectively here.

Inspection Service

Here you can choose to display the kilometres (miles) and days remaining until the next service, and reset the service interval display.

Factory settings

Select **Factory setting** to reset the values of the informative display to their factory settings.

Door, rear lid or bonnet open indicator

If at least one of the doors, rear lid or bonnet is open, a symbol is shown on the informative display indicating that the door, rear lid or bonnet concerned is **open**.

An audible warning is also given simultaneously if the vehicle is being driven at a speed higher than 6 km/h (4 mph).

Auto-check system

Vehicle status

When the ignition is switched on, some vehicle functions such as the condition of its systems are continually checked.

The warning messages about eventual faults in addition to other information is displayed on the informative display. This information is displayed together with the respective symbols on the informative display or by warning lamps that illuminate on the general instrument panel ››› page 32.

The option, **Vehicle status**, appears in the menu when at least one warning message is

present. The first of the warnings given is displayed upon selecting this option. If there is more than one message, the number of messages is displayed on the screen, i.e. **1/3**. This means that the warning currently displayed is the first of a total of three.

Warning symbols

	The engine oil pressure is too low	››› page 34
	Automatic gearbox overheated clutches	››› page 45
	Engine oil level, engine oil sensor faulty	››› page 34
	Engine oil pressure fault	››› page 45

Automatic gearbox overheated clutches

If the symbol appears on the informative display, the temperature of the automatic gearbox clutches has reached an unacceptable level.

The informative display indicates:

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Instruction Manual!

Stop the vehicle in this case, stop the engine and wait until the symbol has switched off. Danger of damage to the gearbox! You can continue driving once the symbol is switched off.

Engine oil pressure fault !

If the symbol appears on the informative display, the vehicle must be immediately taken to a specialised service. Information regarding the maximum engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

WARNING

If the vehicle has to be stopped for technical reasons, park it a safe distance away from moving traffic, switch off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights **››› page 65.**

Note

- **If a warning appears on the informative display it must be confirmed by pressing the button, (B)** **››› Fig. 29 ››› page 43** **before proceeding to the main menu.**
- **The symbols are displayed again until the fault is corrected. After the first time a symbol is displayed, the symbols reappear, but without a message for the driver.**

Maintenance interval display*

Service interval display

Before reaching the service interval, when the ignition is switched on the key symbol appears on the screen for several seconds together with the indication of the number of kilometres (miles) remaining. The number of days remaining until the service inspection is indicated simultaneously.

The informative display indicates:

Service in ... km (miles) or... days.

The indication of kilometres (miles) or time remaining until the inspection reduces in intervals of 100 km or 1 day.

If the service interval is reached, when the ignition is switched on the key symbol appears flashing on the screen together with the word **Service**.

The informative display indicates:

Service now!

Indication of number of kilometres (miles) or time remaining until the service inspection

The number of kilometres (miles) or time remaining until the service inspection can always be displayed when the ignition is switched on by pressing the button (5) **››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30**.

The key symbol and indication of the number of kilometres (miles) remaining appear on the display for several seconds. The number of days remaining until the service inspection is indicated simultaneously.

In vehicles equipped with an informative display this information can be accessed from the menu, **Settings** **››› page 44**. »

Resetting service interval display

The service interval display can be reset only after a service message or pre-warning has been displayed in the general instrument panel display.

To reset the display, it is advisable to visit a technical service, to perform the following actions:

- reset the display memory after performing the applicable inspection,
- record the information in the Maintenance Programme,
- place a sticker on the side of the instrument panel in the driver area indicating the date of the next inspection.

The service interval display can be reset by pressing the (6) ››› Fig. 24 ››› page 30 button.

In vehicles equipped with an informative display the service interval display can be reset from the menu, **Settings** ››› page 44.

CAUTION

We advise against resetting the service interval display yourself, given that this action could upset service intervals, and as a result, lead to faults in the vehicle.

Note

- **Never reset the display between service intervals as this could lead to erroneous indications.**
- **After disconnecting the battery of the vehicle, the service interval display values remain stored.**
- **If the general instrument panel is changed after a repair, the correct values must be input in the service interval display. This operation is carried out by a specialised service.**
- **After resetting the display with flexible service intervals, the information will be indicated in the same way as vehicles with fixed service intervals. Therefore, we recommend that a SEAT Authorised Service resets the service interval display, who will do so correctly using diagnostics equipment.**
- **For more detailed information, please consult the Maintenance Programme.**

Communication

Steering wheel controls*

General information

The vehicle includes a multifunction module from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone and radio/navigation functions without needing to distract the driver.

There are two versions of the multifunction module:

- Audio version, to control the available audio functions from the steering wheel (Radio, audio CD, MP3 CD, iPod®[1], USB[1]).
- Audio + telephone versions o control the available audio functions from the steering wheel (Radio, audio CD, MP3 CD, iPod®[1], USB[1], SD[1]) and the Bluetooth system.

[1] Depending on the vehicle equipment.

Audio system operation

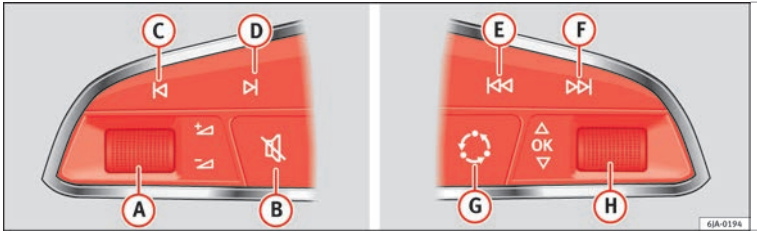

Fig. 31 Controls on the steering wheel.

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX
Ⓐ *Turn*	Up/down volume	Up/down volume	Up/down volume
Ⓐ *Press*	No function	No function	No function
Ⓑ	Mute	Pause	Mute
Ⓒ	Search for last station	*Short press:* switch to the previous song *Hold down:* quick rewind	No function
Ⓓ	Search for the next station	*Short press:* switch to the next song *Hold down:* fast forward	No function
Ⓔ	Previous preset	Previous folder	No function
Ⓕ	Next preset station	Next folder	No function
Ⓖ	Change source	Change source	Change source
Ⓗ *Turn*	Switch MFA function	Switch MFA function	Switch MFA function
Ⓗ *Press*	Acts on the MFA	Acts on the MFA	Acts on the MFA

Audio + telephone system operation

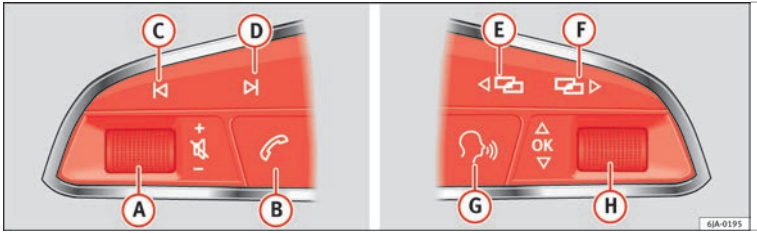

Fig. 32 Controls on the steering wheel.

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone[a)]	Navigation[a)]
(A) *Turn*	Up/down volume	Up/down volume	Up/down volume	Up/down volume	Up/down volume
(A) *Press*	Mute	Pause	Mute	Mute	Mute
(B)	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]	*Short press:* answer/hang up calls, enable/open the telephone menu. *Hold down:* reject an incoming call/switch to private/redial mode	*Short press:* access to the telephone menu on the dash panel[a)]. *Hold down:* redial[a)]
(C)	Search for last station	*Short press:* switch to the previous song *Hold down:* quick rewind	No function	No function[b)]	Radio/media functionality (except AUX)
(D)	Search for the next station	*Short press:* switch to the next song *Hold down:* fast forward	No function	No function[b)]	Radio/media functionality (except AUX)
(E)	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel

Button	Radio	Media (except AUX)	AUX	Telephone[a)]	Navigation[a)]
F	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel	Change menu on instrument panel
G	Enable/disable voice control[a)]	Enable/disable voice control[a)]	Enable/disable voice control[a)]	No function[b)]	Enable/disable voice control
H *Turn*	Next/previous preset station[c)]	Next/previous song[c)]	Acts upon the dash panel menu depending on where it is located	Acts upon the dash panel menu depending on where it is located	Acts upon the dash panel menu depending on where it is located
H *Press*	Acts on the MFA or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	Acts on the MFA or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	Acts on the MFA or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	Acts on the MFA or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option	Acts on the MFA or confirms the menu option of the dash panel depending on the menu option

a) According to the vehicle's equipment package.

b) When a call is being made, radio/media functionality (except AUX).

c) Only if the dash panel is in audio menu.

Voice control

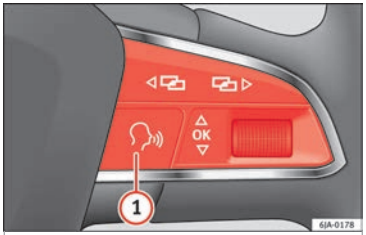

Fig. 33 Multifunction steering wheel: voice control.

The time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and execute them is called dialogue. The system provides acoustic warnings and if necessary, will guide you through the respective functions.

It is recommended to use the **Help** menu the first time that voice control is used in order to familiarize yourself with this function.

Optimum operation of the voice commands depends on several factors:

- Speak slowly and clearly, as far as possible. The system will not recognise words pronounced unclearly, or words and numbers in which syllables are omitted.
- Speak with normal voice volume, without exaggerated intonation or long pauses.
- Close the doors, windows and sunroof for the purpose of dampening or insulating against unwanted noise from the exterior. Do not aim the air from the diffusers at the roof.
- If you are driving very fast, it is recommended that you speak a little louder.
- While talking, avoid making other noise inside the vehicle, i.e., occupants that are talking at the same time.
- Do not speak when the system is providing information.

»

The microphone for the voice control is located in the headliner and is pointing at the driver and the front passenger. Therefore, the driver and the front passenger are the only persons who can operate the device.

Enter the telephone number

The telephone number can be entered as a straight row of memorized numbers in sequence (the whole number at once) or in blocks (separated by brief pauses). After each series of digits (separated by a brief pause) the system repeats the digits that have been recognised.

Digits 0 - -9 and symbols **+**, **∗**, **#** are allowed. The system does not recognise coherent number combinations such as twenty-three.

Voice control activation

Briefly press button ⟲ 1 ››› **Fig. 33** on the multifunction steering wheel.

Disabling voice control

If the system is playing a message, end the message by briefly pressing button ⟲ 1 ››› **Fig. 33** on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system is waiting for a voice command, the dialogue may be completed as follows:

- use the **CANCEL** voice command;
- briefly press button ⟲ 1 ››› **Fig. 33** on the multifunction steering wheel.

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command, the system plays all the possible commands.
CALL A [XYZ]	This command is used to call a contact in the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	For example, after this command you can play the phone book, correct or delete a voice recording for a contact, etc.
CALL LIST	List of selected numbers, lost calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command you can enter a phone number to call the desired person.
REDIAL	After this command the system dials the last number that was selected.
MUSIC	Music playback from the mobile phone or other connected telephone.
OTHER OPTIONS	After this command, the system offers other commands depending on the context.
SETTINGS	Selection for adjusting the Bluetooth®, dialogue, etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue ends.

Note

- **An incoming call will immediately end the dialogue.**
- **Voice control is only possible in vehicles equipped with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control (High version).**

Multimedia

AUX-IN and MDI Inputs

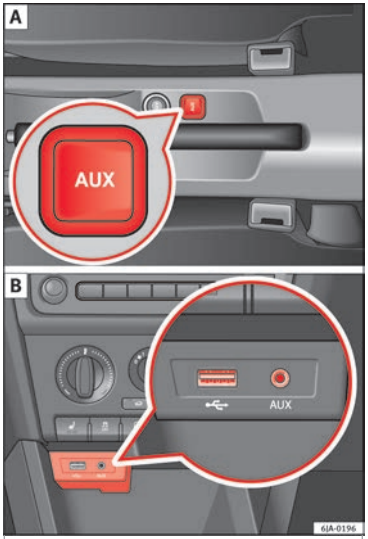

Fig. 34 AUX-IN input/MDI input.

The operating description is located in the respective Instruction Manuals of the audio system or the navigation system.

AUX-IN Input

The AUX-IN input is located in one of the following places:

- in the centre console between the front seats ››› **Fig. 34** - A;
- above the storage compartment in the front centre console ››› **Fig. 34** - B;
- in the front panel of the SEAT Media System 2.2 navigation system.

The purpose of the AUX-IN input is to connect external devices in order to play music (i.e. iPod® or an mp3 player) using the factory-fitted audio system or the navigation system.

MDI Input

The MDI input is located above the storage compartment in the front centre console ››› **Fig. 34** - B;

The MDI input is composed of the USB and AUX-IN inputs.

The purpose of the MDI input is to connect external devices (i.e. iPod®, mp3 players or USB memories) in order to play music using the audio system or the navigation system.

In order to connect Apple multimedia devices (such as an iPod®/iPhone®, etc.) the corresponding adaptor from the SEAT Original Accessories Catalogue is required.

Opening and closing

Remote control

General notes

The remote control key can

- Lock and unlock the vehicle
- Unlock or open the rear lid

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are integrated in the key. The receiver is inside the vehicle. The remote control key has a maximum range of 30 metres. The range is reduced as the batteries start to lose power.

The key includes a foldaway part that can be used to manually lock or unlock the vehicle and to start the engine.

If a lost key is replaced or the receiver is repaired or changed, the remote control key must be adapted by an authorised SEAT dealer. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

Note

- **The remote control is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched on.**
- **The remote control function may be temporarily limited by interference from other** »

transmitters near the vehicle that operate on the same frequency (e.g. mobile phone, television transmitter).

- **If the central locking system or the anti-theft alarm only responds to the remote control at a distance of less than 3 metres, then the battery must be replaced** **››› page 53**.
- **If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control.**

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

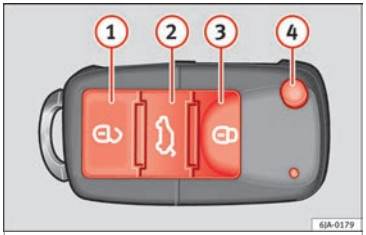

Fig. 35 Remote control key

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press button (1).

Locking the vehicle

– Press button (3).

Deactivating the Safe lock

– Press button (3) twice in 2 seconds. Further information **››› page 54**.

Unlocking the rear lid

– Press button (2). Further information **››› page 59**.

Unfolding the key shaft

– Press button (4).

Folding the key shaft

– Press button (4) and fold the key shaft back to its original position.

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is unlocked using button (1) and none of the doors or the rear lid is opened in the following 30 seconds, the vehicle will automatically relock and the Safe lock or the anti-theft alarm will be activated. This function prevents the vehicle from being unlocked by mistake.

Locking indication

The turn signals will flash if the vehicle has been correctly locked.

Should any of the doors or the rear lid remain open when the vehicle is locked, the turn signals will only flash when they are closed.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave people or animals in vehicles locked from outside with the Safe lock activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Doors locked in this manner could delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of death!

Note

- **Only use the remote control when the doors and the rear lid are locked and the vehicle is within sight.**
- **Do not press the lock button on the remote control before inserting the key in the ignition, otherwise the vehicle could be locked by mistake. Should this occur, press the unlock button on the remote control.**

Remote control synchronisation

f the vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked using the remote control, the key code may not match that of the control unit. This can occur when the remote control buttons are frequently pressed outside the range of the system or if the remote control battery has been replaced.

In this case, it must be synchronised as follows:

- Press any key on the remote control key.

• Open the door using the key within the next minute.

Keys

General notes

Fig. 36 Key with remote control/Key without remote control.

Two keys are always supplied with the vehicle. Depending on the model version, your car may include keys without remote control ››› **Fig. 36** A or with remote control ››› **Fig. 36** B.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never leave the key inside whenever you leave the vehicle - even if only for a moment. This is particularly important if children are to remain in the vehicle. Children might start the engine or some other electrical component, e.g. electric windows. Risk of injury!**
- **Wait until the vehicle has completely stopped before taking the key out of the ignition. Otherwise the steering wheel may lock suddenly. Risk of accident!**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Each key contains electronic components and must, therefore, be protected from dampness and strong vibrations.**
- **Keep the grooves in the key shaft clean. Any dirt (fibre from clothing, dust, etc.) has a negative impact on locks, ignition, etc.**

Note

Should a key be lost, request a duplicate key from an Authorised SEAT dealer.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

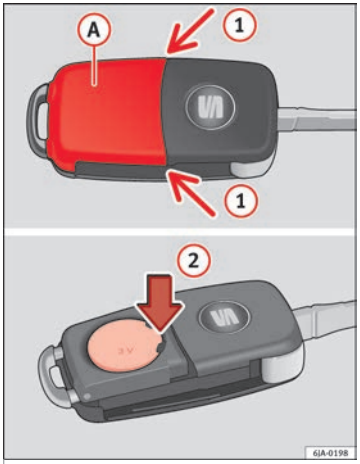

Fig. 37 Remote control key: removing the cover/taking out the battery.

Each remote control key contains a battery that is fitted below the cover (A) ››› **Fig. 37**. If the battery is flat, the red control lamp ››› **Fig. 36** B will not light up when one of the buttons is pressed. We recommend replacing the battery at a SEAT dealer. You can replace the battery yourself as follows. »

– Unfold the key shaft.

– Remove the battery cover by pressing down with your thumb or a flat screwdriver in the location of the arrows (1) ››› Fig. 37.

– Remove the flat battery from the key by pressing downwards in the location of the arrows (2).

– Insert the new battery. Check that the "+" symbol on the battery is facing upwards. The correct polarity is indicated on the battery cover.

– Replace the battery cover and press down until it clicks.

CAUTION

- **The correct polarity must always be observed when replacing the battery.**
- **The new battery must be of the same type as the original.**

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in line with national legislation.

Note

If it is not possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control key once the battery has been replaced, it will need to be re-synchronised ››› page 52.

Central locking system

General notes

All of the doors, the boot lid and the fuel cap flap will[1] unlock at the same time when the central locking system is used.

Warning lamp on the driver door

Once the doors are locked, the warning lamp will flash quickly for 2 seconds and then at a slower rate.

If the vehicle is locked with Safe lock engaged ››› page 55, the warning lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for 2 seconds before switching off for 30 seconds and then flashing at a slower rate.

If the warning lamp flashes quickly for 2 seconds and then remains switched on before flashing at a slower rate after 30 seconds, there is a fault in the interior monitor and tow-away protection system ››› page 58. Go to a technical service.

Individual settings

Unlocking single doors

This optional function unlocks the driver door only. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the next command is given (unlock).

Automatic unlock and lock

The doors and the rear lid are locked automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of about 15 km/h (9 mph).

The doors unlock automatically when the key is removed from the ignition. Additionally, the driver or front passenger can unlock the doors by pressing the ››› page 56 central lock button or by pulling the front door handle.

WARNING

Locking the doors prevents intruders from getting into the car, e.g. while waiting at intersections. However, it can also delay assistance in the event of an accident. Risk of death!

Note

- **Activation of the single door setting can be requested at your SEAT dealer.**

[1] Valid for vehicles with a keyless fuel tank cap.

- **In the event of an accident in which the airbags deploy, the doors will be automatically unlocked for easier access and assistance.**
- **If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, only the driver door can be locked or unlocked using the key** **››› page 55****. All other doors and the boot hatch can be operated manually.**
  - **Manual release** **››› page 161****.**
  - **Manual release of the rear lid** **››› page 161****.**

Unlocking the vehicle with the key

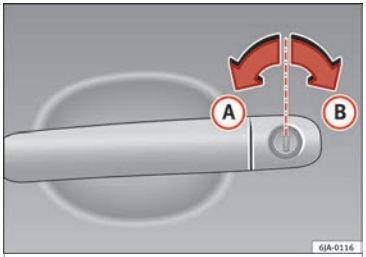

Fig. 38 Key positions during vehicle locking and unlocking.

– Turn the key in the driver door in the forward driving direction to its unlock position (A) ››› **Fig. 38**.

– Pull the handle and open the door.

- All doors (driver door only on vehicles with anti-theft alarm) are unlocked.
- The rear lid is unlocked.
- The fuel tank flap is unlocked[1].
- The courtesy lights switch on.
- The Safe lock is deactivated.
- The driver door warning lamp stops flashing (on vehicles not equipped with an anti-theft system) **››› page 57**.

> **Note**
>
> **If the vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system, you have 15 seconds from the time the door is opened to insert the key in the ignition and start the vehicle. If, during these 15 seconds, the vehicle is not started, the alarm is triggered.**

Locking the vehicle with the key

– Turn the key in the driver door lock cylinder in the reverse direction to its lock position (B) ››› **Fig. 38**.

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel tank flap[1] will be locked.
- The courtesy lights switch off.
- The Safe lock is immediately activated.
- Warning lamp on the driver door starts to flash.

> **Note**
>
> **The vehicle doors cannot be locked if the driver door is open.**

Safe Lock

The central locking system is equipped with a **Safe lock**. If the vehicle is closed from outside, the door locks will automatically lock. The warning lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for about 2 seconds and then at a slower rate. It is not possible to open any of the doors from the inside or outside using the handle. This limits the possibility of intruders getting into the vehicle.

The Safe lock can be deactivated by pressing the lock button twice in less than 2 seconds.

If Safe lock is out of service, the control lamp on the driver door will flash quickly for about 2 seconds before switching off for 30 seconds and then flashing at a slower rate. »

[1] Valid for vehicles with a keyless fuel tank cap.

The Safe lock is re-activated on unlocking and locking the vehicle again.

If the vehicle is locked and the Safe lock is deactivated, the vehicle can be opened from inside by pulling on the door handle.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave people or animals in locked vehicles with Safe lock activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Doors locked in this manner could delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of death!

Note

- **The anti-theft alarm switches on automatically when the vehicle is locked, even if the Safe lock is deactivated. The Vehicle interior monitoring, however, is not activated.**
- **Given that the Safe function will be activated on locking the vehicle, CHECK DEADLOCK will be shown on the general instrument panel display. On vehicles equipped with an informative display, Caution SAFE! On-board documentation!**

Central locking button

Fig. 39 Central lock button.

If the vehicle has not been locked from outside, it is possible to lock and unlock the doors from inside by pressing the ››› **Fig. 39** button, even without the key in the ignition.

Locking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel tank flap[1)]

– Press the button ⊖ ››› **Fig. 39**. The warning lamp ⊖ on the button will light up.

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel tank cap[1)]

– Press the button ⊖ ››› **Fig. 39**. The warning lamp ⊖ on the button will switch off.

If the vehicle has been locked using the central lock button.

- The rear boot lid cannot be unlocked from the outside (security measure, e.g. when stopped at an intersection).
- The doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the handle.
- The vehicle doors cannot be locked if any of the doors are open.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags activate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked for easier access and assistance.

⚠ WARNING

The central locking system remains operative when the ignition is switched off. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, as doors locked from the inside delay assistance in an emergency. Risk of sustaining fatal injuries!

Note

The handles and the central lock buttons will not work if the Safe lock ›› page 55 is activated.

[1)] Valid for vehicles with a keyless fuel tank cap.

Childproof locks

Fig. 40 Activating the childproof lock.

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside. Doors can only be opened from the outside.

The childproof lock is activated and deactivated using the ignition key.

Activating the childproof lock

– Turn the slot in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 40** (in the other direction on the right-hand door).

Deactivating the childproof lock

– Turn the slot in the opposite direction of the arrow (in the other direction on the right-hand door).

Anti-theft alarm system*

General notes

The anti-theft alarm system increases vehicle protection from intruders. The system will initiate acoustic and optical warning signals when your vehicle is tried to be forced.

Activating the alarm system

The anti-theft alarm switches on automatically when the vehicle is locked using the remote control key or inserting the key in the driver door. The alarm is activated around 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating the alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated when the remote control unlock button is pressed. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds after emitting the radio frequency signal, the system will be reactivated.

If the vehicle is unlocked using by inserting the key in the driver door, the ignition must be switched on within 15 seconds. This deactivates the alarm system. If, during these 15 seconds, **the vehicle is not started**, **the alarm is triggered**.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The following areas of the vehicle are monitored:

- Bonnet
- Rear lid
- Doors
- Ignition
- Tilt angle ››› **page 58, Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system**
- The interior ››› **page 58, Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system**
- Drop in voltage in the car systems
- The factory-fitted towing bracket

The alarm is triggered immediately if one of the battery cables is disconnected while the alarm system is active.

How to turn OFF the alarm

To deactivate the alarm, press the unlock button on the remote control key or switch on the ignition.

Note

- **The alarm horn power supply has a 5-year useful life. Contact an Official Service for more detailed information.**
- **To make sure that the anti-theft alarm is fully operative when leaving the vehicle,** »

check that all the doors and windows are closed.

- **Remote control and receiver unit coding means that the remote control cannot be used on other vehicles.**

Vehicle interior monitoring and tow-away protection system

Fig. 41 Button for vehicle interior monitoring and the tow-away protection system.

The Vehicle interior monitoring system is activated if movements are detected in the interior of the vehicle.

Deactivating Vehicle interior monitoring and the tow-away protection system

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the driver door.

– Press the OFF ››› **Fig. 41** button on the centre column. The red backlit symbol OFF on the button turns orange.

– Lock the vehicle within the next 30 seconds.

The Vehicle interior monitoring system and the tow-away protection system are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked again.

Note

- **The vehicle interior monitoring system and the tow-away protection system must be deactivated if there is a danger of the alarm being triggered due to movements by children or animals in the interior when being transported (e.g. by boat or by train) or towed.**
- **The effectiveness of the Vehicle interior monitoring system is reduced if the spectacle case is left open. Always close the storage compartment before locking the vehicle to ensure that this monitoring system operates correctly.**

Rear lid

Automatic boot hatch lock

Where the vehicle has been locked by pressing the button on the remote control with the boot lid open, the boot lid will lock automatically when closed.

The automatic rear lid locking time extension function can be activated. When this function is activated and once the boot lid has been unlocked by pressing the button on the remote control key (2) ››› **page 52**, the boot lid can be re-opened for a certain length of time.

Where required, the automatic boot lid locking time extension function can be activated or deactivated at a SEAT Authorised Service, which will provide all of the necessary information.

Before the vehicle locks automatically, there is a risk of intruders getting into the vehicle. Therefore, we recommend you always lock the vehicle by pressing the button on the remote control or by using the key without remote control ››› **page 55**

Boot hatch

Fig. 42 Rear lid: opening from the outside.

Fig. 43 Close-up of the inside trim of the rear lid: hand grip

The rear lid opening system operates electrically. It is activated by using the handle on the boot lid.

Opening the rear lid

– Pull on the release lever and lift the rear lid ››› **Fig. 42**. The rear lid will automatically open.

Closing the rear lid

– Hold the rear lid by one of the two handles on the interior lining and close it, pushing slightly.

This system may or may not be operative, depending on the situation of the vehicle.

If the rear lid is locked then it cannot be opened, however if it is unlocked then the opening system is operative and the rear lid may be opened.

To lock/unlock, press the button or the button (1) on the remote control key.

A warning appears on the instrument panel display if the boot lid is open or not properly closed.* An audible warning is also given if the boot lid is opened while the vehicle is moving faster than 6 km/h (4 mph)*.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always close the rear lid properly. Risk of accident or injury.**
- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. The glass could smash. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the rear lid is locked after closing it. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the rear lid and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Closing the rear lid without observing and ensuring it is clear could cause serious injury to you and to third parties. Make sure that no one is in the path of the rear lid.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, exhaust gases may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **If you only open the rear lid, do not leave the key inside. The vehicle will not be opened if the key is left inside.**

Note

- **Once the rear lid is closed, its lock is engaged and the alarm system is activated. Only valid if the vehicle has been locked before the rear lid is closed.**
- **The release catch located at the top of the registration plate recess is deactivated on accelerating or at speeds of over 5 km/h (3 mph). The catch is reactivated when the vehicle comes to a standstill and a door is opened.**

Electric window opening and closing

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- **When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that nobody is inside the vehicle, as the windows cannot be opened from the inside in an emergency.**
- **For safety reasons, use safety button (5) ››› Fig. 44 that deactivates the window switches on the rear doors when children are travelling in the rear seats.**

CAUTION

- **Keep the windows clean to ensure the system operates correctly.**
- **Defrost ››› page 125, Windows and exterior mirrors any frozen windows before use. Otherwise you run the risk of damaging the electric window riser mechanism.**
- **Always make sure all of the windows are closed on leaving the locked vehicle.**

Note

- **The vehicle heating and ventilation system should be used to ventilate the interior while driving. Leaving the windows open could allow dust and other dirt to enter the vehicle and cause unpleasant noises at certain speeds.**
- **Do not leave the side windows open at high speeds, as this will overly increase fuel consumption.**

Using electric window switches

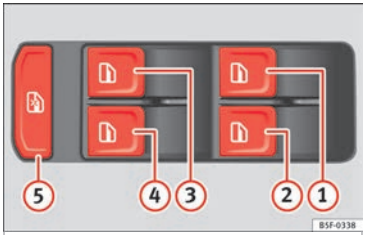

Fig. 44 Detail of the driver door: controls for the windows.

The electric window opening and closing system only works when the ignition is switched on.

Opening

– Press gently on the respective button on the door to open the window. The process will stop when the button is released.

– The driver door window can also be automatically opened by pressing the button as far as it will go (fully open). Press the button again to immediately stop it.

Closing

– Press the respective button gently to close the window. The process will stop when the button is released.

Window control buttons

(1) Button for window in front left door
(2) Button for window in front right door
(3) Button for window in rear left door
(4) Button for window in rear right door
(5) Safety switch for deactivating the electric window buttons in the rear doors

Safety button

Press the safety button (5) ››› Fig. 44 to deactivate the controls on the rear doors. Pressing the safety button (5) again will reactivate the controls on the rear doors.

If the rear door controls are deactivated, the warning lamp on the safety button (5) will light up.

Note

The electric window opening mechanism is equipped with a thermostat switch. This may overheat if the window is opened and closed repeatedly. This causes the window to lock temporarily. Once the thermostat switch has

cooled down, the window can be operated once again.

Roll-back function on electric windows

The electric windows are equipped with a roll-back system that reduces risk of injury when closing windows.

If an obstacle is present, the closing mechanism will stop and the window will roll back a few centimetres.

If an obstacle prevents closing for the next 10 seconds, the closing mechanism will once again stop and the window will roll back another few centimetres.

If in the next 10 seconds you attempt to close the window after it has rolled back the second time, only the closing mechanism will be stopped even if the obstacle is still present. The roll-back function is still connected.

The roll-back function will only be disconnected if you once again attempt to close the window in the following 10 seconds. **In this case, the window will close at full force**.

If you wait for a further 10 seconds, the roll-back function will be once again connected.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

The location of the controls of **right-hand drive** cars differs slightly from the location shown here ››› Fig. 45 ››› page 61. However, the symbols indicating the respective positions of the controls remain the same.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you. Always use your dipped beam headlights if it is dark or if visibility is poor.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Use the lights in line with local law.**
- **However, drivers always remain responsible for correctly adjusting and using the lights.**

Note

- **An audible warning will be heard when the light control is set to ≡D and you remove the ignition key and open the door. Once the driver door is closed (ignition off), the audible warning will stop, whereas the side lights will remain on to light up the stationary vehicle in case this is necessary.**
- **Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the lights may mist up temporarily on the inside. This is particularly the case in the event of a difference in temperature between the inside and in front of the light. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted, although the edges may remain misted. The real lights and turn signals can mist up. This has no influence on the useful life of the lighting system.**

Sidelight and headlight

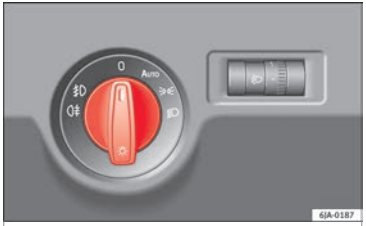

Fig. 45 Instrument panel: light control.

Switching on side lights

– Turn the light switch ››› Fig. 45 to position ≡D. »

Switching on dipped beam

– Turn the light switch ››› Fig. 45 to position ≡D.

Switching off lights (except daytime driving lights)

– Turn the light switch ››› Fig. 45 to position 0.

Range control of main lights ≡D

Fig. 46 Instrument panel: light range control.

– Turn the control ››› Fig. 46 to set the lights to the required setting.

Positions

The control positions roughly correspond to the following vehicle load conditions.

(-) Two front occupants, luggage compartment empty.

(1) All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.

(2) All seats occupied, luggage compartment fully loaded.

(3) Driver only, luggage compartment fully loaded.

CAUTION

Always adjust the range of the lights so that:

- **Your vehicle does not dazzle others, particularly oncoming traffic**
- **The range of the headlights is sufficient for safe driving**

Note

Make sure you set the range of the main lights when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

Daytime driving light

Daytime running lights are signalling devices for improving road safety. The lights are built into the headlights and come on each time the ignition is turned on if the light switch is in position **0** or **AUTO** ››› Fig. 45. It is automatically switched off when the side lights are turned on.

Automatic control of the dipped beam in combination with the daytime running lights

If the *dipped beam control* and the *daytime running lights* are activated at the same time, the dipped beams and the instrument panel lighting will automatically come on as required (e.g. when entering a tunnel) and the daytime running lights will switch off. When the automatic dipped beam control switches off the dipped beams (e.g. when coming out of a tunnel), the daytime running lights come back on.

WARNING

The rear lights do not come on with the daytime driving light. A vehicle which does not have the rear lights on may not be visible to other drivers in the darkness, if it is raining or in conditions of poor visibility.

Note

Please observe any relevant legal requirements which may apply in your country.

Turn signal and main beam lever

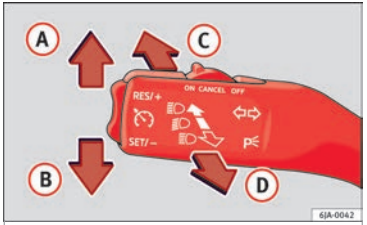

Fig. 47 Turn signal and main beam lever.

The turn signal and main beam lever also operates the parking lights and the headlight flasher.

Right and left-hand ⇨ turn signal ⇦

– Move the lever ››› **Fig. 47** up (A) or down (B).

– In order for the turn signals to flash three times (turn signal to change lanes), move the lever briefly up or down just as far as point of resistance and then release it.

– Keep the lever held down at the point of resistance for the turn signals to flash for as long as you hold the lever, e.g. when changing lanes.

Main beams

– Switch on the dipped beam ››› **page 61**.

– Press the lever ››› **Fig. 47** forward in the direction indicated by arrow (C).

– Pull the lever back to its original position in the direction indicated by arrow (D) to switch the main beam off.

Headlight flasher

– Pull the lever ››› **Fig. 47** towards the steering wheel (point of resistance) in the direction indicated by arrow (D).

Parking lights

Instructions for use ››› **page 65**.

CAUTION

Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

- **The turn signals only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning lamp ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the general instrument panel.**
- **The turn signals switch off automatically when the steering wheel is returned to the straight-ahead position.**
- **If a turn signal bulb is defective, the control lamp flashes at double speed.**

Automatic headlight control (AHC) AUTO

If the light switch is in this position **AUTO** ››› **Fig. 45**, the side lights, headlights and the number plate lights will turn on or off automatically.

The light is adjusted according to the data recorded by the light sensor that is installed between the windscreen and the inside rear view mirror.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the symbol **AUTO** located next to the light switch will illuminate. If the light illuminates automatically, symbol located next to the light switch will also illuminate.

Automatic headlights in case of rain

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** and is connected to the automatic wipe in case of rain for more than 10 seconds or wipe (position (2) or (3)) for longer than 15 seconds, ››› **page 69** then the side lights and headlights will automatically switch on.

The light automatically switches off if more than 4 minutes have elapsed and the automatic wipe or wipe (position (2) or (3)) have not been switched on. »

CAUTION

Do not cover the windscreen light sensor with stickers or similar objects; this could impair operation.

Front fog lights*

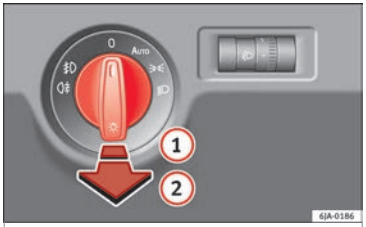

Fig. 48 Instrument panel: light switch.

Switching on front fog lights

– First turn the light switch ››› **Fig. 48** to position ⊱⊰, ≣D or **AUTO**.

– Pull on the light switch to position (1).

The ≣D ››› **page 32** warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the front fog lights are switched on.

Front fog lights with cornering function*

✓ Not valid for vehicles fitted with Full-LED lights

Front fog lights with cornering function provide better lighting of the area around the car when driving through a corner or parking, etc.

Front fog lights with cornering function switch on depending on how far you turn the steering wheel or whether or not the turn signals[1] are switched on, if the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is stationary, the ignition is switched on or you are moving at a speed of less than 40 km/h (25 mph);
- The daytime driving light is switched off
- The dipped beam is switched on
- The fog lights are switched off
- Reverse gear is not engaged

Rear fog light

Switching on the rear fog light

– First turn the light switch ››› **Fig. 48** ››› **page 64** to position ⊱⊰, ≣D or **AUTO**.

– Pull on the light switch to position (2).

If the vehicle is not equipped with front fog lights ››› **page 64**, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the switch to position ⊱⊰ or ≣D and pulling it to position (2). This type of switch only has one position.

The ⊕≣ ››› **page 32** warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the rear fog lights are switched on.

If you are towing a trailer or caravan equipped with a rear fog light on a vehicle with a **factory-fitted towing bracket or one installed using parts from the original SEAT parts catalogue**, only the rear fog light on the trailer or caravan will light up.

[1] In the event of a conflict between both functions, i.e. if you turn the steering wheel to the left while the right-hand turn signal is on, the turn signals will take priority.

“Coming Home”/“Leaving Home”* function

This function makes it possible, under poor visibility conditions, to automatically turn on the lights for a brief period of time after the vehicle has been parked or when approaching the vehicle.

The function is automatically turned on if the following conditions are met:

- The light switch is in position AUTO ››› page 63.
- The visibility around the vehicle is reduced.
- The ignition is switched off.

To turn on this function, switch on the headlight flasher prior to exiting the vehicle.

The light is adjusted according to the data recorded by the light sensor that is installed between the windscreen and the inside rear view mirror.

The function automatically turns on the side lights and headlights, the lighting for the entry area on the exterior mirrors and the number plate light.

“Coming Home” function

The light is automatically switched on when the driver door is opened (for 60 seconds after the ignition is switched off).

The lights is switched off when all the doors and the boot lid are closed.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light will switch off after 60 seconds.

“Leaving Home” function

The light is automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control.

The light is switched off after 10 seconds or when the vehicle is locked.

Hazard warning light switch

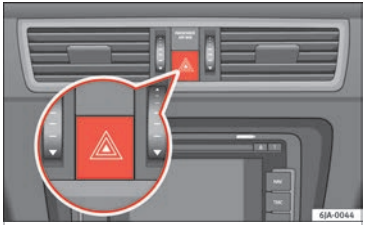

Fig. 49 Instrument panel: switch for hazard warning lights.

– Press the button ⚠ ››› Fig. 49 to switch the hazard warning lights on or off.

The warning lamps on the instrument panel and the warning lamp on the switch will flash at the same time as the turn signals when the hazard warning lights are switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

The hazard warning lights come on automatically in the event of an accident in which an airbag is triggered.

Note

Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users, for example:

- **When reaching the tail end of a traffic jam**
- **if the vehicle has a technical fault or you are involved in an emergency situation.**

Parking lights*

Parking lights P≤

– Switch the ignition off.

– Move the turn signal lever ››› Fig. 47 ››› page 63 up or down to turn on the right or left-hand parking lights respectively.

Parking light on both sides

– Turn the light switch ››› Fig. 45 A ››› page 61 to position ≡D≤ and engage the steering lock. »

Note

- **The parking lights P⇐ can only be activated with the ignition disconnected.**
- **The parking light will not come on automatically after switching off the ignition if the left- or right-hand turn signal is left on.**

Adjusting the headlights

The light beam of the dipped beam lights is asymmetric: the side of the road on which you are driving is lit more intensely.

When a car that is manufactured in a country that drives on the right travels to a country that drives on the left (or vice versa), it is normally necessary to cover part of the headlight bulbs with stickers or to change the adjustment of the headlights to avoid dazzling other drivers.

In such cases, the regulations specify certain light values that must be complied with for designated points of the light distribution. This is known as “Tourist light”.

The light distribution of the halogen and full-LED headlights of the SEAT Toledo allows the specific “tourist light” values to be met without the need for stickers or changes in the settings.

Note

“Tourist light” is only allowed temporarily. If you are planning a long stay in a country that drives on the other side, you should take the vehicle to an Authorised Technical Service to change the headlights.

Interior lights

Interior lighting – version 1

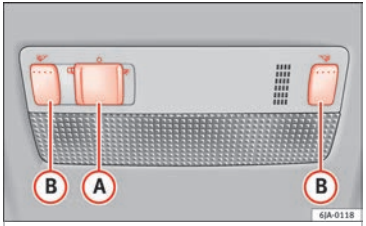

Fig. 50 Interior lighting – version 1.

Switching on the interior light

– Move the switch (A) ››› **Fig. 50** toward the side of the light. The symbol will be displayed.

Switching off the interior light

– Move the switch (A) ››› **Fig. 50** to the centre position **O**.

Operating the courtesy light

– Move the switch (A) ››› **Fig. 50** to the centre of the light. The symbol will be displayed.

Reading lights

– The reading lights are switched on and off by pressing switch (B) ››› **Fig. 50**.

Where the courtesy light is on (switch (A) ››› **Fig. 50** in position), the light will come on if:

- the vehicle is unlocked,
- one of the doors is opened,
- The key is removed from the ignition

When the courtesy light is on (switch (A) in position), the light will switch off if:

- the vehicle is locked,
- the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after all of the doors have been closed

If a door is left open or if switch (A) is in the position, the interior lighting switches off after about 10 minutes to prevent the battery from running flat.

Interior lighting – version 2

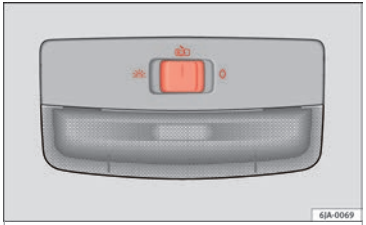

Fig. 51 Interior lighting – version 2.

Switching on the interior light

– Move the light switch to position ⌘ ››› **Fig. 51**.

Switching off the interior light

– Move the light switch to position **0**.

Operating the courtesy light

– Move the light switch to position ⌘.

The lights in version 2 are operated using the same guidelines as ››› **page 66, Interior lighting – version 1**.

Rear interior light

Fig. 52 Rear interior light.

Press the button ››› **Fig. 52** to switch the lighting on or off.

Glove compartment light

The light will come on automatically when the glove compartment is opened. The light will go out when the glove compartment is closed.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on automatically when the boot is open and switches off automatically 10 minutes after the boot lid has been opened.

Visibility

Heated rear window

Fig. 53 Heated rear window switch.

– Switch the heated rear window on or off by pressing the button ⌘ ››› **Fig. 53**, the warning lamp in the button will come on or go off respectively.

The heated rear window only works when the engine is running.

After approximately 7 minutes, the heating device of the rear window **switches off** automatically.

For the sake of the environment

The heated rear window should be switched off as soon as the glass is demisted. By saving electrical power you can also save fuel ››› **page 106.**

»

Note

In the event of a drop in voltage in the on-board systems, the heated rear window switches off automatically to ensure enough power to control the engine **»» page 143, Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment.**

Sun visors

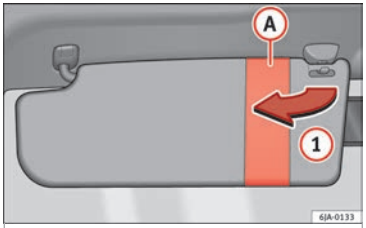

Fig. 54 Driver's sun visor.

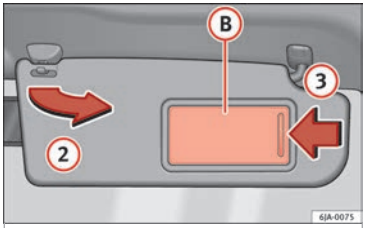

Fig. 55 Front passenger's sun visor.

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their central supports and turned towards the doors in the direction of arrow (1) »» **Fig. 54** and (2) »» **Fig. 55** respectively.

The strip (A) is to store small objects such as notepaper, etc.

The front passenger sun visor includes a vanity mirror (B) with a cover. The cover is opened by sliding it in the direction indicated by arrow (3) »» **Fig. 55**.

WARNING

Do not turn sun visors with attached objects such as ball-pens, etc. toward the head protection airbag triggering zone on the side windows. The head protection airbags could injure occupants if triggered.

Windscreen wipers and windscreen washers

Introduction

The windscreen wipers and windscreen washers only work when the ignition is switched on.

The speed of the automatic wipe in case of rain is automatically adjusted according to the intensity of the rainfall.

The rear window is wiped once if the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Fill the windscreen washer fluid **»» page 139**.

WARNING

- **Make sure the blades** **»» page 162** **are in perfect condition for good visibility and safe driving.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the wash/wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. The windscreen washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.**

CAUTION

- **During winter, always check that the windscreen wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before each trip or before switching on the ignition. If you switch on the windscreen wipers when the wiper blades are frozen to the glass, this could damage both the wiper blades and the wiper motor.**
- **If the ignition is switched off when the windscreen wipers are on, they will start operating in the same mode when the ignition is switched back on. The wiper blades may be frozen to the glass at low temperatures when the ignition is switched off.**
- **Carefully separate the frozen wipers from the windscreen or rear window.**

- **Remove snow and ice from the wipers before starting your journey.**
- **Careless handling could lead to the wiper arms damaging the windscreen.**
- **For safety reasons, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year. They can be purchased at a SEAT Authorised Service.**
- **The ignition cannot be switched on while the windscreen wiper arms are in a raised position. Otherwise, the windscreen wipers would return to their original position and could damage the paintwork on the bonnet.**

Note

Keep the wipers clean. The wipers can be soiled with remains of wax solutions from car washes »» page 124.

- **On vehicles equipped with windscreen washer jets, these are heated once the engine is running.**

Handling windscreen wipers and washers

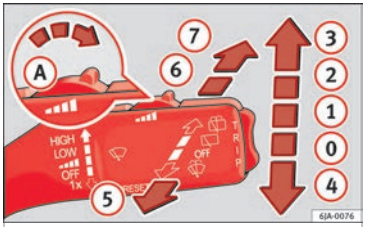

Fig. 56 Window wiper lever.

Short wipe

– Give the windscreen a **brief** wipe by moving the lever down to position (4) »» Fig. 56.

Wipe intervals/automatic wipe with rain sensor*

– Push the lever up to position (1) »» Fig. 56.

– With switch (A), adjust the wipe interval or rain sensor sensitivity.

Switch (A) has 4 positions.

The rain sensor* is part of the intermittent wipe function.

The rain sensor* controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain.

Slow wipe

– Push the lever up to position (2) »» Fig. 56.

Continuous wipe

– Push the lever up to position (3) »» Fig. 56.

Automatic windscreen wash and wipe

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel, position (5) »» Fig. 56, and the windscreen washer and wipers are switched on.

– Release the lever. The washer will stop and the windscreen wipers will keep running for 1-3 wipes (depending on the windscreen washer operating time).

Rear window wiper*

– Press the lever forward to position (6) »» Fig. 56 and the rear window wiper will run every 6 seconds.

Automatic rear window wash and wipe*

– Press the lever fully forward to position (7) »» Fig. 56 and the rear window wiper and washer switch on at the same time.

– Release the lever. The rear window washer will stop and the rear window wipers will keep running for 1-3 wipes (depending on the jet operating time). **When released, the lever remains in position (6).** »

Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever to position (0) ››› Fig. 56.

⚠ WARNING

The rain sensor may not detect enough rain to switch on the wipers.

- **If necessary, switch on the wipers manually when water on the windscreen obstructs visibility.**

Note

Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the rain sensor*. This may cause sensor disruption or faults.

Headlight washer system*

The headlight washers operate briefly if the dipped headlights or headlights are on and the lever is moved to position (5) ››› Fig. 56. The headlight washer system also operates every 10 windscreen wash cycles.

Clean off stubborn dirt (insects, etc.) from the headlights at regular intervals, for instance when filling the fuel tank. Please observe the following indications ››› page 126, Headlights.

To ensure the system works properly in winter, keep the nozzle holders free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray.

CAUTION

Never pull on the nozzle holders. Risk of damage to the system!

Rear vision mirrors

Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment

Basic settings

– Push the lever at the bottom of the mirror forward.

Rear vision mirror anti-dazzle setting

– Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Exterior mirrors

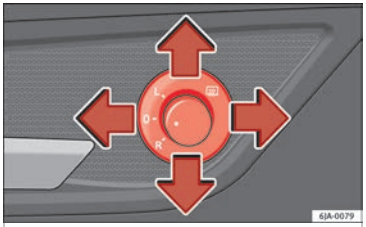

Fig. 57 Door interior: adjuster knob.

Before beginning any journey, adjust the rear view mirrors for a good rear visibility.

Heated rear vision mirrors*

– Turn the knob to position ››› Fig. 57.

Electrical adjustment of the left-hand exterior mirror*

– Turn the knob to position L ››› Fig. 57. The mirror movements are the same as those of the knob.

Electrical adjustment of the right-hand exterior mirror*

– Turn the knob to position R ››› Fig. 57. The mirror movements are the same as those of the knob.

⚠ WARNING

- **Convex (wide-angle) rear vision mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects appear smaller and further away than they really are. For this reason, you should not rely on these rear vision mirrors for judging the distance of vehicle behind.**
- **If possible, use the interior rear vision mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you.**

Note

- **Exterior mirrors are only heated when the engine is running.**

- **Do not touch the exterior mirrors when the heating system is running.**
- **If the electrical adjustment should ever fail to operate, the rear vision mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing the edge of the mirror glass.**
- **Visit the technical service in the event of a fault in the electrical rear vision mirror adjustment system.**

Seats and head restraints

Adjusting seats and head restraints

Introduction

Set the driver seat in such a way that the pedals can be fully depressed with your legs slightly bent.

Set the driver seat backrest so that you can reach the upper point of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

The correct seat position is very important for:

- reaching all of the controls safely and quickly,
- a relaxed posture that will not produce fatigue,
- **maximum protection from the seat belts and airbag system**

⚠ WARNING

- **Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident!**
- **Be careful when adjusting the front seats! Careless and uncontrolled adjustment can cause injuries.**
- **The backrests must not be reclined too far back while driving. This could limit the effect of the seat belts and the airbag system. Risk of injury!**
- **Never transport more than the permitted amount of people in your vehicle.**
- **Every occupant in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system** **»» page 24, Transporting children safety.**
- **The front seats, head restraints and seat belts must always be adjusted to the size of the vehicle occupant to provide you and your passengers with the greatest possible protection.**
- **Your feet should remain in the footwell while the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, on the window or on the seat! This also applies to passengers. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in case of a sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position!**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel and dash panel. Failure to respect the minimum distance means that the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury if triggered!**
- **Objects must not be placed in the footwell, as they could move to the area of the pedals in the event of a braking manoeuvre or change of direction. This would prevent the**

»

clutch, brake or accelerator from being pressed.

- **Do not place any items on the front passenger seat other than those allowed (e.g. child seat). Risk of accident!**

Note

After a certain time, the backrest angle adjustment mechanism may gain a certain amount of play.

Manually adjusting the front seats

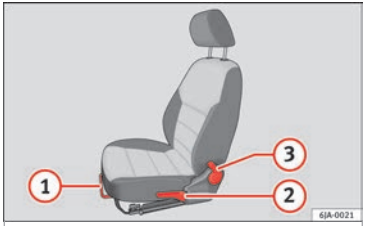

Fig. 58 Seat adjustment controls/Adjustment controls for a sports seat

Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

– Lift the lever (1) ››› **Fig. 58** (the central part) and move the seat forwards or backwards.

– Then release the lever (1) and move the seat further until the catch engages.

Adjusting seat height

– To raise, pump the lever (2) ››› **Fig. 58** (several times if required) upwards to the required seat position.

– To lower, pump the lever (2) (several times if required) downwards to the required seat position.

Adjusting the backrest angle

– Take your weight off the backrest and pull the lever (3) ››› **Fig. 58** backwards, pressing on the backrest to the required angle.

– When the lever (3) is released, the backrest will remain in the set position.

Head restraints

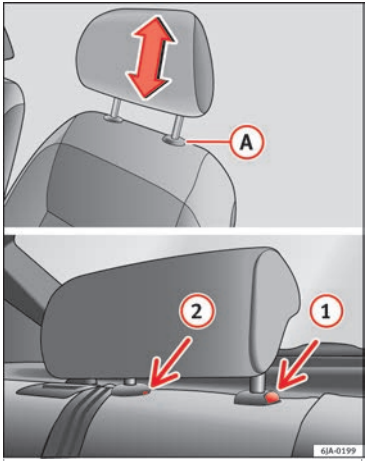

Fig. 59 Head restraints: adjusting/removing head restraints.

Head restraints cannot be moved up or down or removed on sports seats.

Adjusting height

– Take hold of the sides of the head restraint and pull upwards.

– To lower the head restraint, press button Ⓐ ››› Fig. 59 while pushing the head restraint downward.

Fitting and removing head restraints on front seats

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press catch Ⓐ ››› Fig. 59 and remove the head restraint.

– To refit, insert the head restraint into the holes in the backrest, pushing it down until it engages.

Fitting and removing head restraints on rear seats

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Press catch ① ››› Fig. 59 while pressing on the catch in hole ② with a max. 5 mm flat-headed screwdriver and remove the head restraint.

– To refit, insert the head restraint into the holes in the backrest, pushing it down until it engages.

For maximum head restraint protection, adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head.

The head restraint must be adjusted in line with the height of users. Correct adjustment of the head restraint, together with the seat belts, ensure effective passenger protection ››› page 6.

⚠ WARNING

- **Badly adjusted head restraints increase the risk of injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **Never drive with the head restraints removed. Risk of injuries!**
- **If the seats are in use, never drive with the rear head restraints in their out-of-use position.**

Seat functions

Heated front seats*

Fig. 60 Heated front seats.

The cushion and backrest of the front seats can be heated electrically.

Press the ⊘ or ⊘ ››› Fig. 60 button to switch on and adjust the heated front seats.

Press once to connect the heating at maximum force.

Press the button again to reduce the force of the heating and switch it off. The force is indicated by the number of warning lamps lit on the button.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the heated seat if your perception of pain and/or temperature or that of your passenger is limited, e.g. due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes). It could cause burns on the back, buttocks and legs that are difficult to heal. If you still want to use the heated seat, take frequent breaks on long journeys so that the body can recover from the trip. Ask your doctor about your particular situation.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **To avoid damaging the heating elements, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion or backrest.**
- **Do not use the heated seats if nobody is sitting on them or if there are items attached to or lying on them, such as a child seat or a bag, etc. This could lead to a fault in the seat heating elements.**
- **Do not clean the seats with anything damp** ››› page 127.

»

Note

- **Only connect the heated seats when the engine is running. This provides considerable savings on the battery capacity.**
- **In the event of a drop in voltage in the on-board systems, the heated seats switch off automatically to ensure enough power to control the engine** **»» page 143, Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment.**

Armrest on front seats with inner storage*

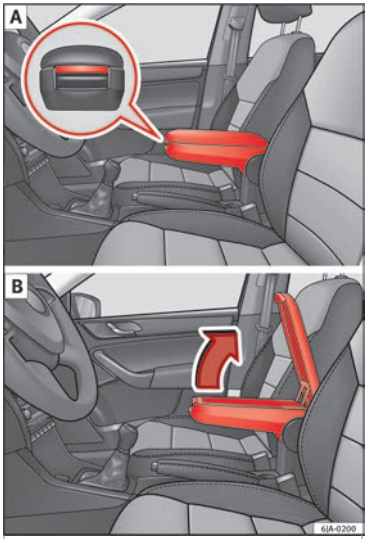

Fig. 61 Armrest/Opening and closing the storage compartment.

Adjusting armrest height

– Lift the armrest as far as it will go and then fold it downward.

– Raise the armrest until it engages in one of the 5 positions.

Opening storage compartment

– Press the button located on the front of the armrest »» **Fig. 61** - A.

– Lift the storage compartment lid »» **Fig. 61** - B.

Armrests on rear seats

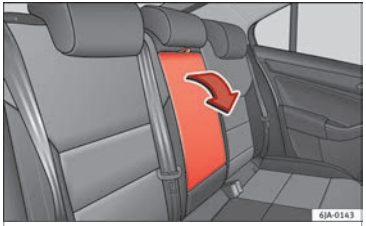

Fig. 62 Rear seats: armrest.

The armrest can be folded away for greater comfort using the handle »» **Fig. 62**.

Folding the rear backrest

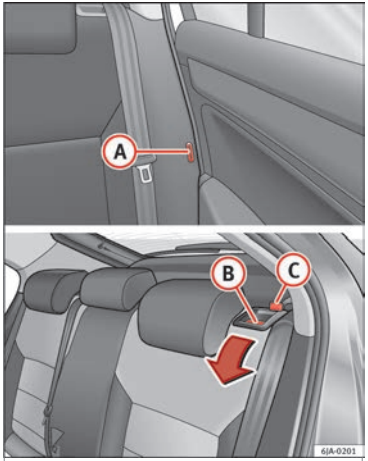

Fig. 63 Unlocking the backrest.

Folding

– Before folding the rear seats, adjust the position of the front seats so that the rear seats are not damaged. When the front seats are adjusted to the rear position, their head restraints should be removed before folding the backrests on the rear seats. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they cannot be soiled or damaged.

– Insert the seat belt latch plate into hole (A) ››› **Fig. 63** located on the corresponding side of the vehicle – safety position.

– Press the lock button (B) to unlock the backrest and fold it forward.

Returning to the initial position

– Where the head restraint has been removed, insert it into the backrest when partially raised.

– Push the backrest backwards to its original position until the lock button engages – check that it is locked by pulling on the backrest ››› ❗.

– Make sure the red protruding part (C) is not visible.

⚠ WARNING

- **Once the backrests have been lifted, the seat belts and their buckles must be in their initial position – ready for use.**
- **The backrests must be safely locked to ensure any items in the boot cannot move around the interior of the vehicle in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre. Risk of injuries!**
- **Make sure the rear backrests are correctly locked. Only then will the three-point automatic seat belt on the rear central seat work correctly.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Take care when handling the rear backrests so as not to damage the seat belts. The seat belt must never be left behind the lifted backrest.

Transport and practical equipment

Practical equipment

Passenger side glove compartment

Fig. 64 Instrument panel: passenger side glove compartment.

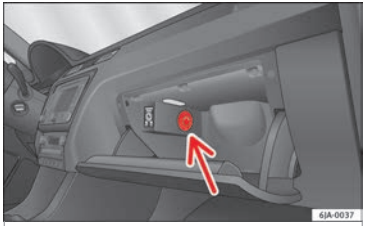

Fig. 65 Storage: cooling control.

Opening and closing passenger side glove compartment

– Pull the catch on the lid in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› **Fig. 64** and open the lid.

– Close the lid and push it until it engages.

Glove compartment cooling*

Open or close the air outlet by turning the thumbwheel ››› **Fig. 65**.

If the air outlet is open and the air conditioning is on, the cooled air will be released into the glove compartment.

If the air outlet is open and the air conditioning is off, outdoor air (not conditioned) will be released into the glove compartment.

The air outlet should be closed if the air conditioning is being used in heating mode or where glove compartment cooling is not in use.

⚠ WARNING

- **For safety reasons, all storage compartments must be closed while the vehicle is moving.**
- **Never place any objects on the instrument panel. These objects could be flown around the interior while the vehicle is moving (on accelerating or turning) and distract you. Risk of accident!**
- **Make sure objects remain in the centre console or other compartments while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, this could prevent you from braking, changing gear or accelerating. Risk of accident!**

Note

The glove compartment can hold a bottle no larger than 1 litre.

Compartment for reflective vest

Fig. 66 Driver seat: storage compartment

There is a compartment below the driver seat ››› **Fig. 66** to store the reflective vests.

⚠ WARNING

The compartment is solely designed to store the reflective vest and no other objects. Objects falling out of the storage compartment could limit or prevent use of the pedals.

CAUTION

The compartment is solely designed to store the reflective vest and no other objects, since there is a risk of damaging the storage compartment.

Front seat storage compartments

There is a storage pocket on the rear part of the backrest of the front seats.

These pockets are designed to hold maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Do not place heavy objects in the pockets. Risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not place overly large objects in the pockets (e.g. bottles) or objects with sharp edges. Risk of damage to the pockets and the upholstery.

Drink holder in centre console

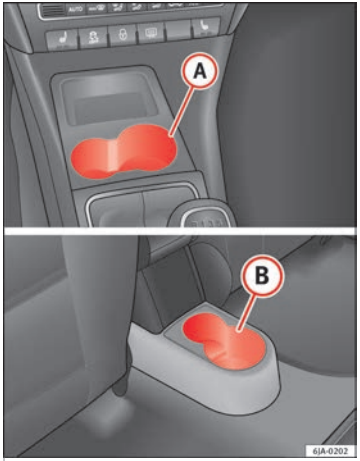

Fig. 67 Centre console: drink holder

(A) Front drink holder in the centre console

(B) Rear drink holder in the centre console

WARNING

- **Do not put hot drinks in the drink holders. They could spill while the vehicle is moving. Risk of scalding!**
- **Do not use cups or glasses made of fragile materials (e.g. glass or china). These could cause injury in the event of an accident.**

CAUTION

Avoid putting open drinks containers in the drink holder while the vehicle is moving. They could spill (e.g. on braking) and cause damage to the electrical equipment or the seat covers.

Drink holder in the rear armrest

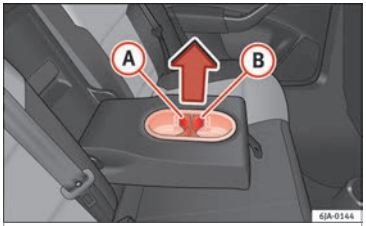

Fig. 68 Rear seats armrest: drink holder

Two drinks can be placed in the drink holder.

Use the detachable parts (A) and (B) ››› **Fig. 68** to change the size of the holes.

– Remove part (A) or (B) in the direction indicated by the arrow and replace in the required position in the drink holder.

Cigarette lighter*

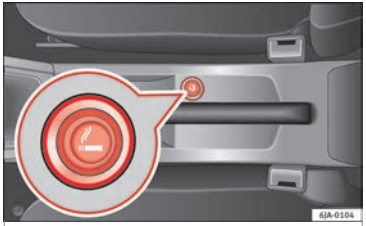

Fig. 69 Centre console: lighter

The cigarette lighter is located at the front of the centre console ››› **Fig. 69**.

Using the cigarette lighter

– Press the cigarette lighter knob ››› **Fig. 69**.

– Wait for the lighter to spring out.

– Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil immediately.

– Put the cigarette lighter back in its socket.

⚠ WARNING

- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns and serious injuries.**
- **The cigarette lighter also works when the ignition is off and when the ignition key is removed. Therefore, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.**

Note

- **The 12 V power socket of the cigarette lighter can also be used as a power source for electrical appliances ›››** page 79, 12 Volt power socket.
- **Additional information ›››** page 122, Accessories and modifications to the vehicle.

Ashtrays*

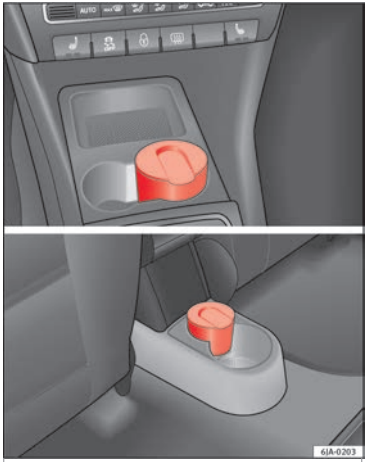

Fig. 70 Centre console: front ashtray/rear ashtray.

Removing the ashtray

– Pull the ashtray ››› **Fig. 70** upwards to remove.

Inserting the ashtray

– Push the ashtray down.

⚠ WARNING

Never put flammable materials in the ashtray. Risk of fire!

ⓘ CAUTION

Never hold onto the ashtray by the lid when removing it. Risk of breaking the lid.

12 Volt power socket

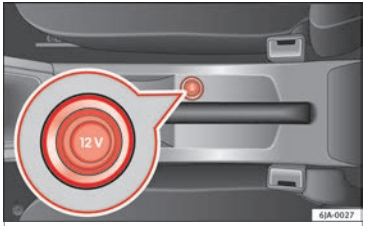

Fig. 71 Centre console: 12 V power socket.

The 12 V power socket is located at the front of the centre console ›› **Fig. 71**.

Using the power socket

– Open the cover or remove the cigarette lighter concealing the socket.

– Insert the plug of the electrical appliance into the socket.

Additional information ›› **page 122, Accessories and modifications to the vehicle**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Improper use of the sockets or electrical appliances can cause a fire and lead to burns and other serious injuries.**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. The 12 V power socket is also functional when the ignition is switched off and the key is removed.**
- **Should the connected appliance overheat, immediately switch it off and disconnect it from the socket.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **The 12 V power socket can only be used to power appliances with a power rating of up to 120 watts.**
- **Never exceed the maximum permitted power, as this could cause damage to the vehicle electrical installation.**
- **With the engine switched off, however, the vehicle battery will drain. Risk of discharging the battery!**
- **Only use suitable plugs so as not to damage the power socket.**
- **Only use appliances that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in compliance with current regulations.**
- **Before switching the ignition on or off, unplug the appliances from the power socket to protect them from any damage caused by fluctuations in voltage.**
- **Follow the instructions for use of connected appliances!**

Multimedia compartment

Fig. 72 Front centre console: multimedia compartment.

The multimedia compartment is in the storage compartment of the front centre console ›› **Fig. 72**.

The compartment can be used to hold mobile phones, mp3 players or similar devices.

⚠ WARNING

Never use the multimedia compartment as an ashtray or to store flammable materials. Risk of fire!

Storage compartment for (sun)glasses*

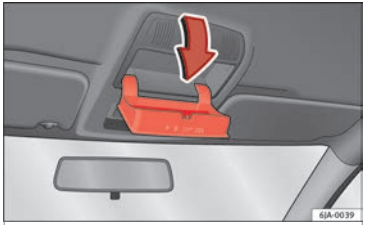

Fig. 73 Close-up of roof panel: storage compartment for eyeglasses.

– Press the compartment lid and it will drop down ››› **Fig. 73**.

⚠ WARNING

This compartment must only remain open when removing or replacing glasses.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Do not place heat-sensitive objects in the compartment as they could be damaged.**
- **The side compartment supports a maximum load of 0.25 kg.**

Coat hooks*

The coat hooks are located on the B-pillars and on the handles on the interior lining above each rear door.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure that any items of clothing hanging from the coat hooks do not obstruct your view to the rear.**
- **Only use the coat hooks for light items of clothing and make sure that there are no heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.**
- **Do not use clothes hangers to hang up the clothing, as this could interfere with the function of the head-protection airbags.**

ⓘ CAUTION

The side hooks support a maximum load of 2 kg.

Net pockets on back of front backrests

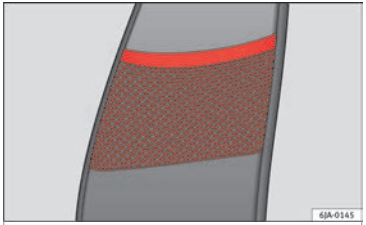

Fig. 74 Front seats backrests: net pockets.

There are net pockets on the inside part of the front seats backrests ››› **Fig. 74**.

These pockets are designed to hold lightweight objects such as a mobile phone or an mp3 player.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not exceed the maximum load that the net pockets can support. Heavy objects cannot be safely secured. Risk of injuries!**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **The net pockets support a maximum load of 150 g.**
- **Do not place overly large objects in the pockets (e.g. bottles) or objects with sharp edges. Risk of damage to the pockets.**

Storage compartments in centre console

Fig. 75 Centre console: storage compartment

Open storage compartment in centre console ››› Fig. 75.

Storage compartment in front door

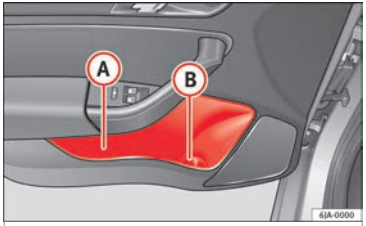

Fig. 76 Storage compartment in door trim.

There is a bottle carrier in part (B) ››› Fig. 76 of the storage compartment in the front door.

⚠ WARNING

Only use part (A) ››› Fig. 76 of the compartment in the front door to store objects that do not protrude from it so as not obstruct the deployment area of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in luggage compartment*

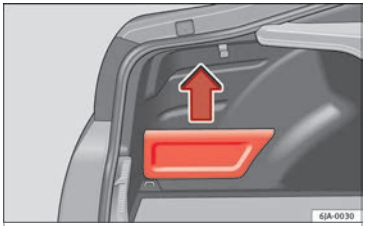

Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: storage compartment

The lid from the side storage compartment can be removed to increase the size of the boot.

– Hold onto the top of the lid and pull it out in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› Fig. 77.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **The compartments are designed to hold small objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg.**
- **Make sure you do not damage the storage compartment or the boot trim when using the compartment.**

Storing objects

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other loose objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment.

Unsecured objects which shift back and forth could impair the driving safety or driving characteristics of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Place heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Place the heavy objects first.

– Secure heavy objects to the fastening rings ››› page 82.

⚠ WARNING

- **Loose luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment could cause serious injuries.**

»

- **Always stow objects in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings.**
- **Use suitable straps to secure heavy objects.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects can be thrown forward, injuring vehicle occupants or passers-by. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag. If this happens, objects may shoot outward like a missile. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect vehicle handling and lead to an accident. Therefore, it is essential to adjust your speed and driving style accordingly, to avoid accidents.**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle weights or allowed maximum weight. If said weights are exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially when the rear lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment, closing the door behind them; they will be trapped and run the risk of death.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Close and lock all the doors and rear lid when you leave the vehicle. Before you lock the vehicle, make sure that there are no adults or children in the vehicle.**

Note

- **Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slits in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Ensure that the ventilation slots are never covered.**
- **Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings are commercially available.**

Fastening rings*

There can be four fastening rings in the luggage compartment for fastening luggage and other objects.

– Always use suitable and undamaged straps to secure luggage and other objects to the fastening rings ›››⚠ **in Loading the luggage compartment on page 81**.

– Pull up the fastening rings to attach the straps.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can build up so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of kinetic “energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

Example: An object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (31 mph), this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to approximately 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this “object” strikes an occupant as it flies through the interior of the vehicle. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag.

⚠ WARNING

- **If pieces of baggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged retaining cords, injuries could result in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.**
- **Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.**

Luggage compartment

Introduction

Please observe the following points to ensure the vehicle handles well at all times:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.

– Secure luggage using the fastening rings or retaining net ››› **page 83**.

During an accident, even small and light objects can have so much kinetic energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. However, the speed of the vehicle is the most important factor.

Example: An unsecured object weighing 4.5 kg produces energy corresponding to 20 times its weight in a frontal collision at 50 km/h (31 mph). This means that its weight reaches around 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries that might be sustained if this "projectile" strikes an occupant as it flies through the vehicle interior.

⚠ WARNING

- **Store objects in the luggage compartment and secure to the fastening points.**
- **In an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects in the interior can be flung forward and possibly injure vehicle occupants or others. This risk is even greater if the flying objects hit a triggering airbag. In this case, any rebounding objects could injure vehicle occupants. Risk of fatal injuries!**
- **Take into account that transporting heavy objects changes the centre of gravity that could also cause changes in vehicle handling. Risk of accident! Therefore, always adjust your speed and driving style to suit these circumstances.**
- **Securing the load to the rings using unsuitable or damaged straps could lead to injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre. Secure suitable straps safely to the rings to ensure this does not happen.**
- **Position the load so it cannot move forward during a sudden braking manoeuvre. Risk of injuries!**
- **If transporting sharp or dangerous objects in the space provided when the rear seats are folded, ensure the safety of the occupant of the remaining rear seat** **»» page 8.**
- **If the rear seat located alongside a folded seat is occupied, ensure safety, for example, by placing the load so that it stops the seat from folding backward in the event of being hit from behind.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, exhaust gases may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. Risk of accident!**
- **Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment!**

ⓘ CAUTION

Make sure sharp objects stored in the boot cannot not damage the rear window heating filaments.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adapted to suit the load **»» page 144, Life cycle of tyres.**

Category N1 vehicles

Category N1 vehicles with no protection grille must use a retaining set compliant with Standard EN 12195 (1 – 4) to secure the load.

Retaining elements*

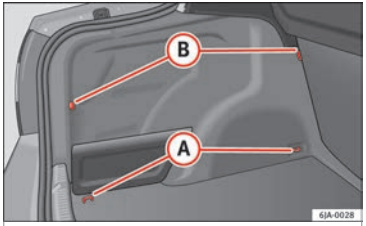

Fig. 78 Luggage compartment: retaining elements.

The following retaining elements are fitted in the boot **»» Fig. 78**:

(A) Rings to secure the load and the retaining nets.

(B) Rings used solely for the retaining nets. »

CAUTION

The rings support a maximum load of 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Note

The front ring (B) is below the folding back-rest of the rear seats ››› Fig. 78.

Hook*

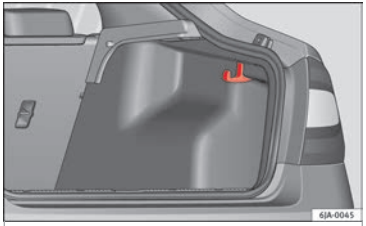

Fig. 79 Luggage compartment: hook.

There are hooks on both sides of the boot to secure light items of luggage such as bags, etc. ››› **Fig. 79**.

CAUTION

The side hooks support a maximum load of 7.5 kg.

Retaining nets*

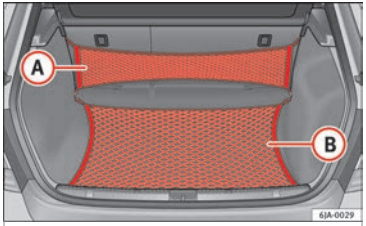

Fig. 80 Retaining nets.

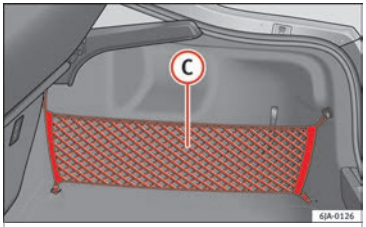

Fig. 81 Retaining nets.

Example of securing retaining nets ››› **Fig. 80** and ››› **Fig. 81**.

(A) Sideways bag

(B) Ground net

(C) Lengthways bag

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum load that the nets can support. Heavy objects cannot be safely secured. Risk of injury!

CAUTION

- **The retaining nets support a maximum load of 1.5 kg.**
- **Do not place any item with sharp edges in the net. Risk of damaging the net!**

Rear shelf

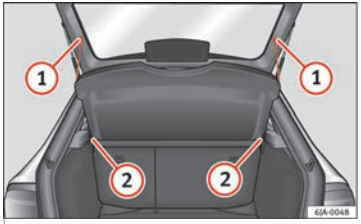

Fig. 82 Remove the shelf.

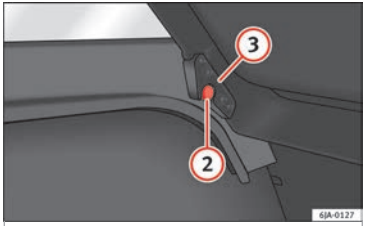

Fig. 83 Remove the shelf.

The shelf can be removed if a large load is to be transported.

Removing the shelf

– Remove the straps from the shelf (1) ››› **Fig. 82**.

– Remove the shelf from its housing (2) by knocking it gently from underneath between the supports.

Fitting the shelf

– Place the shelf on the side supports on the trim.

– Adjust the shelf supports (3) ››› **Fig. 83** to fit the supports (2) in the trim.

– Fit into place by knocking the top of the shelf gently between the supports.

– Attach the straps (1) to the tray.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place objects on the rear shelf that could endanger the vehicle occupants in case of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident.

ⓘ CAUTION

- **The rear shelf supports a maximum load of 1 kg.**
- **If handled incorrectly, the tray could bend on closing the rear lid and become damaged or damage the trim. Follow the instructions below:**
  - **The shelf supports (3) ››› Fig. 83 must be securely in place in the trim supports (2).**
  - **The size of the load must not exceed the height of the shelf.**
  - **When open, the shelf must not be bent against the shelf seal.**
  - **There must be no objects in the space between the open shelf and the backrest of the rear seat.**

Note

The shelf will lift when the rear lid is opened.

Roof rack*

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- **The load on the roof carrier must be properly secured. Risk of accident!**
- **Always secure the load using retaining straps that are in good condition.**
- **Distribute the load evenly.**
- **When transporting heavy or large objects on the roof, any change in normal vehicle behaviour due to a change in the centre of gravity or increased wind resistance must be taken into account. Risk of accident! For this reason, speed and driving style must be adjusted for the situation.**
- **Avoid sudden manoeuvres and braking.**
- **Adjust your driving style to suit visibility, the weather and road and traffic conditions.** »

- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. Risk of accident!**

CAUTION

- **Only use SEAT-authorised roof carriers.**
- **Where roof carriers from other systems are used or where they are not fitted properly, any damage caused to the vehicle will not be covered by the warranty. Therefore, carefully follow the Instruction Manual for installation of the roof carrier.**
- **Remember that the rear lid must not hit the roof load.**
- **The total height of the vehicle increases according to the roof load. Compare the height of the vehicle with the heights of bridges or other underpasses, for example, the height of the garage door.**
- **Do not forget to remove the roof carrier before entering an automatic carwash.**
- **Take into account that the load must not damage the aerial located on the roof.**

For the sake of the environment

If aerodynamic resistance increases, fuel consumption will also increase.

Attachment points

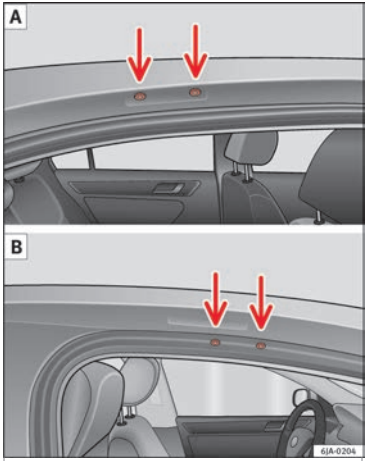

Fig. 84 Basic roof carrier attachment points.

Location of the basic roof carrier attachment points ››› **Fig. 84**:

(A) Rear attachment points

(B) Front attachment points

Install and remove following the instructions given.

CAUTION

Follow the instructions given in the manual.

Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load (including the support system) of **75 kg** and the total authorised weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded.

It will not be possible to carry the full maximum load if the roof carrier you are using is rated for a load which is less than this figure. In this case, you can only load the roof carrier to the maximum load permitted in your installation manual.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating and air conditioning

General notes

The power of the heating depends on the temperature of the coolant. Therefore, maximum power is only obtained when the engine has reached operating temperature.

The temperature and humidity of the air inside the vehicle decrease when the cooling system is turned on. This therefore increases the comfort of all vehicle occupants when outside temperatures and humidity are high. It also helps prevent the windows from misting over during cold periods of the year.

The air recirculation system can be switched on temporarily to increase the cooling effect.

Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of ice, snow or leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling.

When the air conditioning is on, **condensation** can drip from the evaporator in the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

⚠ WARNING

- **All windows must be clear of ice, snow and condensation for driving safety. Therefore, make sure you familiarise yourself with the correct use of heating and ventilation, window demisting and defrosting and cooling.**
- **Never use the air recirculation system for too long, as it prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle and used air can cause tiredness, reduce your attention span and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident. Switch off the air recirculation system as soon as the windows begin to mist over.**

Note

- **Used air escapes through ventilation slots in the rear of the luggage compartment.**
- **Smoking is not recommended while the air recirculation system is in use, as the smoke drawn from the interior of the vehicle settles in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This causes a persistent, unpleasant smell while the system is running that is time-consuming and expensive (evaporator replacement) to eliminate.**
- **To ensure proper functioning, never cover the air outlets.**

Economic use of the air conditioning system

When the air conditioning is switched on, the compressor consumes engine power and has influence on fuel consumption.

If the vehicle interior has overheated due to excessive solar radiation, it is best to open the windows or doors to allow the hot air to escape.

While in motion, the air conditioning should not be switched on if the windows are open.

If the interior temperature can be reached without switching on the air conditioning, the fresh air mode should be used.

For the sake of the environment

Saving fuel reduces emissions.

Faults

If the air conditioning does not work at outside temperatures above +5 °C (+41 °F) then the system is faulty. This may be due to one of the following reasons:

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary ››› page 163.
- The air conditioning compressor has switched off temporarily because of increased engine coolant temperature ››› page 31.

If you cannot repair the fault yourself or where cooling power continues to drop, switch off the system. Contact a specialised service.

Air vents

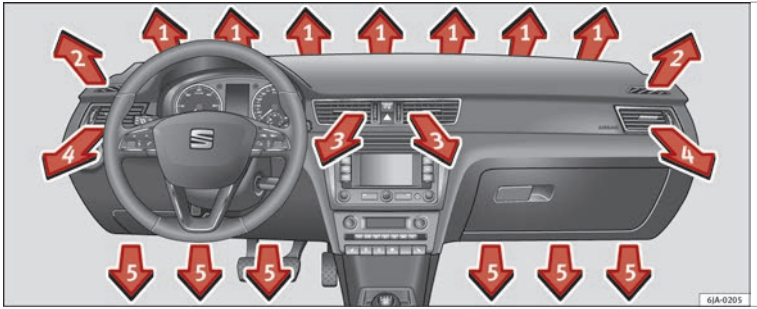

Fig. 85 Air vents

Opening air vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical circular control upwards.

Closing air vents 3 and 4

– Turn the vertical circular control downwards.

Changing the direction of air delivery from air vents 3 and 4

– The air circulation height can be varied by changing the position of the sliding adjuster upwards or downwards ››› Fig. 85.

– The air circulation direction can be varied by changing the position of the sliding adjuster to the right or to the left.

The flow of air from the vents is controlled using control Ⓒ ››› Fig. 86. Vents **3** ››› Fig. 85 and **4** can be opened and closed individually.

Depending on the position of the adjusters and on the weather, open vents can provide air which is either heated, unheated or cooled.

Heating

Operation

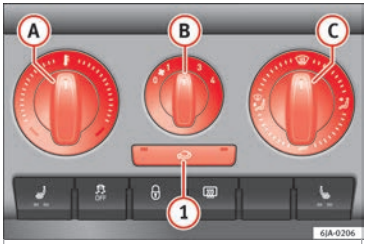

Fig. 86 Heating: controls.

Temperature selection

– Turn rotary control (A) ››› Fig. 86 clockwise to increase the temperature.

– Turn rotary control (A) anti-clockwise to reduce the temperature.

Blower selection

– Turn rotary control (B) ››› Fig. 86 to position 1 to 4 to switch the blower on.

– Turn rotary control (B) to position 0 to switch the blower off.

– Press button (1) ››› ⚠ in Air recirculation on page 90 to close the fresh air vent.

Air distribution selection

– Turn rotary control (C) ››› Fig. 86 to select the air vents ››› page 88, Air vents you wish to activate.

All controls, except control (B) ››› Fig. 86, can be set to any intermediate position.

Leave the blower activated at all times to prevent the windows from misting over.

Note

If the system is set so that all of the air is used to defrost the windows, no air is supplied to the footwell area. This could limit heating comfort.

Heating selection

Recommended settings for the different modes:

Settings	Control position			Button (1)	Air vents 4
	(A)	(B)	(C)		
Windscreen and side window defrost	Clockwise as far as it will go	3		Do not switch on	Open and direct towards the side window
Windscreen and side window defrost	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Open and direct towards the side window
Heat as quickly as possible	Clockwise as far as it will go	3		Switch on briefly	Opening
Mild heating	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - blower	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Required position		Do not switch on	Opening

»

Note

- **Controls Ⓐ ››› Fig. 86 ››› page 88, Ⓑ, Ⓒ and button ①.**
- **Air vents 4 ››› page 88.**
- **We recommend you leave the air vents 3 ››› page 88 in the open position.**

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

Switching on air recirculation mode

– Press button ⊖ ① ››› Fig. 86 ››› page 88 and the lamp in the button will illuminate.

Switching off air recirculation mode

– Press button ⊖ ① ››› Fig. 86 ››› page 88 again and the lamp in the button will switch off.

If air vent Ⓒ ››› Fig. 86 ››› page 88 is in position ⊛, air recirculation mode switches off automatically. Press the ⊖ button to switch air recirculation mode back on in this position.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in General notes on page 87.

Air conditioning (manual)*

General notes

The air cooling system only works if A/C button ② ››› Fig. 87 ››› page 90 is pressed and under following conditions:

- The engine is running,
- The outside temperature is above +2 °C (+36 °F),
- The blower control is in position 1–4.

When the cooling system is on and under certain conditions, air can be blown from the vents at a temperature of approximately +5 °C (+41 °F). In the event of prolonged, irregular distribution of the air flow from the outlets and significant differences in temperature, e.g. on leaving the vehicle, sensitive people may catch cold.

Note

A visit to the specialised service once a year is recommended to clean the air conditioning system.

Operation

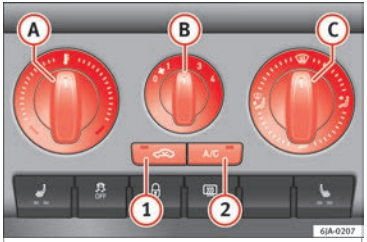

Fig. 87 Air conditioning: controls.

Temperature selection

– Turn rotary control Ⓐ ››› Fig. 87 clockwise to increase the temperature.

– Turn rotary control Ⓐ anti-clockwise to reduce the temperature.

Blower selection

– Turn rotary control Ⓑ ››› Fig. 87 to position 1 to 4 to switch the blower on.

– Turn rotary control Ⓑ to position 0 to switch the blower off.

– Press button ① ››› page 92, **Air recirculation** to close the fresh air vent.

Air distribution selection

– Turn rotary control (C) ››› Fig. 87 to select the air vents ››› page 88 you wish to activate.

Switching cooling on and off

– Press the button [A/C] (2) ››› Fig. 87 and the lamp in the button will illuminate.

– Press the [A/C] (2) button again and the light in the button will switch off.

Note

- **If the air distribution is directed towards the windows, all, of the heating power is used to defrost the windscreen. No warm air is directed to the footwell area. This could limit heating comfort.**
- **The [AC] button lamp will illuminate after the system has been switched on, even if not all of the conditions for cooling system operations are met. Cooling is indicated as available once all of the conditions are met ››› page 90, General notes.**

Air conditioning selection

Basic air conditioning control settings recommended for the corresponding operating modes:

Settings	Control position			Button		Air vents 4
	A	B	C	1	2	
Windscreen and side window defrost[a)]	Required temperature	3 or 4		Do not switch on	Switched on automatically[b)]	Open and direct towards the side window
Heat as quickly as possible	Clockwise as far as it will go	3		Switch on briefly	Off	Opening
Mild heating	Required temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Off	Opening
Heat as quickly as possible	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Switch on briefly[c)]	Ignition	Opening
Optimum cooling	Required temperature	1 or 2		Do not switch on	Ignition	Open and direct towards the roof
Fresh air mode - blower	Anti-clockwise as far as it will go	Required position		Do not switch on	Off	Opening

a) This type of setting is not recommended in countries with high air humidity. The windows could cool too quickly and cause them to mist over on the outside.

b) The lamp in button 2 lights up, even if not all of the conditions for cooling system operations are met. Cooling is indicated as available once all of the conditions are met »» page 90, General notes.

c) In certain conditions, air recirculation mode can switch on automatically »» page 92, a lamp illuminates in the button.

Note

- **Controls A »» Fig. 87 »» page 90, B, C and buttons 1 and 2.**
- **Air vents 4 »» page 88.**

- **We recommend you leave the air vents 3 »» page 88 in the open position.**

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

Switching on air recirculation mode

– Press button (1) ››› Fig. 87 ››› page 90 and the lamp in the button will illuminate.

Switching off air recirculation mode

– Press button (1) ››› Fig. 87 ››› page 90 again and the lamp in the button will switch off.

If air distribution control (C) ››› Fig. 87 ››› page 90 is in position, air recirculation mode switches off automatically Press the button to switch air recirculation mode back on in this position.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in General notes on page 87.

Climatronic* (automatic air conditioning)

General notes

Climatronic automatically maintains a comfortable temperature. To do so, it automatically regulates the supplied air temperature and the blower and air distribution levels. The system also allows for the effect of sunlight, so there is no need for manual adjustment. **Automatic operations ››› page 94** guarantee maximum comfort any time of year.

Climatronic description

Cooling only works if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running
- the outside temperature is above +2 °C (+36 °F);
- A/C (18) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 switched on.

In order to ensure engines subject to heavy loads are cooled, the air conditioning compressor is switched off in the event of high coolant temperatures.

Recommended setting for all seasons of the year

- Set the required temperature. We recommend +22 °C (72 °F).
- Press the AUTO button (12) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94.
- Adjust vents **3** ››› page 88 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Change between degrees Centigrade and degrees Fahrenheit

Keep the AUTO and A/C ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 buttons pressed down at the same time. The data is displayed on the screen in the units required.

Note

A visit to the specialised service once a year is recommended to clean the Climatronic system.

Controls

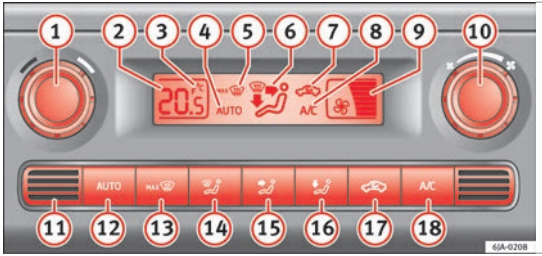

Fig. 88 Climatronic: controls.

Buttons/controls

(1) Interior temperature setting

Display

(2) Selected interior temperature
(3) Degrees Centigrade or Fahrenheit
(4) Automatic air conditioning mode
(5) Defrost or demist windscreen
(6) Air flow direction
(7) Air recirculation
(8) Cooling on/off
(9) Selected blower speed

Buttons/controls

(10) Set blower speed
(11) Interior temperature sensor
(12) Automatic mode
(13) Defrost or demist windscreen
(14) Air distribution to windows
(15) Air distribution to upper body
(16) Air distribution to footwells
(17) Air recirculation
(18) Cooling on/off

Note

The interior temperature sensor (11) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 is at the bottom. Do not cover it with stickers or the like, as this could have a negative effect on Climatronic operations.

Automatic mode

Automatic mode is used to maintain a constant temperature and demist the windows inside the vehicle.

Switching on automatic mode

– Set the interior temperature between +18 °C (+64 °F) and +29 °C (+84 °F).

– Adjust vents **3** ››› page 88 and **4** so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

– Press the AUTO button (12) ››› Fig. 88 and **AUTO** displayed on the screen.

Automatic mode is switched off by pressing the air distribution buttons or increasing or decreasing the blower speed. However, the temperature remains regulated.

Temperature selection

– When you switch on the ignition, control (1) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 can be used to set the required interior temperature.

It is possible to select interior temperatures from +18 °C (+64 °F) to +29 °C (+84 °F). In this range the temperature is regulated automatically. If a temperature below +18 °C (+64 °F) is selected, “LO” is displayed on the screen. If a temperature above +29 °C (+84 °F) is selected, “HI” is displayed on the screen. At both extremes, Climatronic works at maximum cooling or heating power, respectively. The temperature is not regulated.

In the event of prolonged, irregular distribution of the air flow from the outlets (particularly the footwells) and significant differences in temperature, e.g. on leaving the vehicle, sensitive people may catch cold.

Air recirculation

Air recirculation prevents unpleasant smells, e.g. when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic, from entering the interior.

Switching on air recirculation mode

– Press button (17) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 and the symbol is displayed on the screen.

Switching off air recirculation mode

– Press button (17) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 and the symbol disappears from the screen.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in General notes on page 87.

Note

If air recirculation mode remains on for 15 minutes, the symbol will start to flash on the screen to indicate prolonged air recirculation. If air recirculation is not switched off, the symbol will continue to flash for about 5 minutes.

Blower selection

Climatronic automatically regulates the blower speed according to the interior temperature. It is possible, however, to set the blower speed to suit requirements.

– Turn rotary control (10) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 counter-clockwise (to lower the speed) or clockwise (to increase the speed).

Climatronic will switch off when the blower switches off.

⚠ WARNING

- **Used air can cause tiredness, reduce attention spans and cause the windows to mist over. This increases the risk of an accident.**
- **Do not switch off Climatronic for longer than necessary.**
- **Switch Climatronic back on as soon as the windows begin to mist over.**

Windscreen defrosting

Switching on windscreen defrosting

– Press button MAX (13) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94.

Switching off windscreen defrosting

– Press button MAX (13) ››› Fig. 88 ››› page 94 several times or press the AUTO button.

The temperature is regulated automatically. The air output is increased from vents **1** ››› page 88 and **2**.

Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving!
- For safety reasons, the steering wheel adjustment lever must always be pushed securely against the steering column to prevent the steering wheel from accidentally changing position while driving. Risk of accident!
- If the steering wheel is adjusted closer to your face, the protective effect of the driver airbag will be decreased in the event of an accident. Check that the steering wheel is pointing towards the upper part of your body.
- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside part at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the airbag is triggered, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.
- When moving with the engine switched off, the ignition key must always remain in position ② ››› Fig. 89 ››› page 97 (ignition on). The control lamps will light up in this position. Otherwise, the steering lock could engage suddenly. Risk of accident!
- Do not remove the key from the ignition until the vehicle has come to a standstill and is secure (e.g. the handbrake is engaged). Otherwise, the steering lock could suddenly engage. Risk of accident!
- Always take the ignition key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if you leave children in the vehicle. Children could, for example, start the engine with the subsequent risk of accident.
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents! Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness and can cause death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.
- Never switch the engine off until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Turning the steering wheel fully in either direction when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is in gear puts the power steering under great stress. This could lead to noise. Never leave the steering wheel turned fully in either direction for more than 15 seconds. Risk of damage to the power steering system!
- The starter motor may only be used (key position ③ ››› Fig. 89 ››› page 97 in the ignition) if the engine is off. Using the starter motor when the engine is running could damage it.
- Immediately release the ignition key when the engine starts, otherwise damage could be caused to the starter motor.
- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine before it reaches operating temperature. Risk of engine damage!
- Do not tow-start the engine. Risk of engine damage! In vehicles with a catalytic converter, fuel that has not been burned could reach the catalytic converter and catch fire in it. This would lead to a fault in the catalytic converter. You may use the battery from another vehicle to help you start your engine ››› page 157, Jump-starting.
- After prolonged and demanding operation of the engine, when the journey has ended, do not stop the engine immediately. Let the engine run at idle for about one more minute. This will stop the engine from overheating.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine when the vehicle is stationary. If possible, move off immediately after starting the engine. This will help the engine reach operating temperature more quickly, reducing the quantity of emissions.

Note

- **The engine can only be started with the original SEAT key.**
- **Loud running noises may be heard briefly after cold-starting the engine. This is normal and is no cause for concern.**
- **After the engine has been stopped and the ignition switched off, the radiator fan may continue running for around 10 minutes.**
- **If the engine still does not start after a second attempt, the fuel pump fuse might have blown. Check it and replace if necessary** **››› page 163** **or contact your Specialised Service.**
- **You should always engage the steering lock when you exit the vehicle. This will hinder any attempts at theft.**

Power steering

The power steering allows you to turn the steering wheel more easily.

If the power steering fails or the engine is off (towing), it is still possible to turn the vehicle's steering wheel fully. However, you need more strength to steer the vehicle.

Start-up lock security system (immobiliser)

There is an electronic chip in the key. The electronic immobiliser is deactivated when the key is inserted into the ignition. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the key is removed from the ignition.

The engine will not start if an unauthorised key is used.

The informative display indicates:

Immobiliser active!

Ignition lock

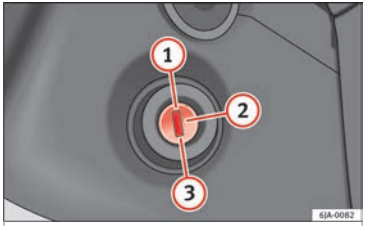

Fig. 89 Ignition key positions.

Petrol engines

(1) – Ignition switched off, engine stopped, steering can be locked

(2) – Ignition switched on

(3) – Starting

Diesel engines

(1) – Fuel supply stopped, ignition switched off, engine stopped, steering can be locked

(2) – Engine pre-heating, ignition switched on

(3) – Starting

To engage the **Steering lock** without the key in the ignition, turn the steering wheel slightly until you hear it engage.

If the **steering lock is engaged** and it is difficult or impossible to turn the key to position (2), release the lock by turning the steering wheel slightly in both directions.

Starting the engine

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. When you switch on the ignition, the glow plug warning lamp ➿ will light up. The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

Do not connect electrical appliances during preheating so as not the drain the vehicle battery unnecessarily. »

Starting the engine

- Move the gearbox lever into neutral or move the selector lever to position **P** or **N** and pull firmly on the handbrake.
- Press the clutch pedal all the way down (2) ››› Fig. 89 ››› page 97 and start the engine (3), without pressing the accelerator. Keep the clutch pedal pressed down until the engine starts.
- Release the ignition key as soon as the engine starts. The key returns to position (2).
- If the engine does not start after 10 seconds, turn the key back to position (1). Repeat the action after 30 seconds.
- Release the handbrake before moving off.

Switching off the engine

Stop the engine by turning the ignition key to position (1) ››› Fig. 89 ››› page 97.

Brakes and brake servo systems

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- **The brake servo only works when the engine is running. Braking when the engine is switched off requires applying more strength to the brake pedal. Risk of accident!**
- **Press down on the clutch pedal when stopping and braking with a manual gearbox, petrol engine vehicle at low speed. Otherwise, the brake servo might not work properly. Risk of accident!**
- **In the event of damage to the standard front spoiler or where a different front spoiler, wheel trims, etc. are subsequently fitted, make sure the air vent to the brakes on the front wheels is not blocked. Otherwise, braking operations may be impaired. Risk of accident!**
- **Always fully release the handbrake. If it is only partially released, this will cause overheating of the rear brakes, which can impair the function of the brake system. Risk of accident!**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. They could release the handbrake or move the gear lever. The vehicle could start moving. Risk of accident!**
- **Insufficient fuel can cause the engine to run irregularly or to switch off. Brake assist systems could be impaired. Risk of accident!**
- **Always adjust your driving style to suit visibility, the weather and road and traffic conditions. The best vehicle safety offered by brake assist systems must never encourage you to run greater risks. Risk of accident!**

CAUTION

- **Observe the information concerning new brake pads** **››› page 104****.**
- **Where braking is not necessary, do not wear down the brake pads by pressing down gently on the brake pedal. This causes the brakes to overheat, increasing their wear and increasing braking distances.**
- **To ensure the brake assist systems work properly, all wheels must be fitted with tyres approved by the manufacturer.**

Note

- **If you brake suddenly and the brake system control unit regards the situation as hazardous for the drivers behind you, the brake lights will begin to flash automatically. After reducing speed to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) or stopping the vehicle, the brake lights will stop flashing and the hazard warning lights will switch on. The hazard warning lights are automatically switched off when you accelerate or restart the vehicle.**

- **On long, steep gradients, reduce your speed and change to a lower gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to a lower gear position (automatic gearbox). This uses the force of the engine and the brakes do not suffer as much. If you still have to brake, do so intermittently, pressing down repeatedly on the brake pedal.**
- **Vehicle modifications (e.g. to the engine, brakes, frame or a combination of wheels and tyres) could impair the brake assist systems** **›› page 122, Accessories and modifications to the vehicle.**
- **In the event of a fault in the ABS system, the ESC, TCS and EDL are switched off automatically. A fault in the ABS is indicated by the** **›› page 36** **warning lamp.**

Brakes

Wear

The rate of wear of the brake pads depends on the driving style and on the way in which the vehicle is used. The brake pads will wear more quickly if you use your vehicle frequently in urban traffic and short trips or drive in a sporty style. Under these **demanding conditions**, visit your specialised service, even before the scheduled service date, so that the thickness of the brake pads can be measured.

Wet roads or road salt

If brakes are wet or frozen, or if you are driving on roads which have been gritted with salt, braking power may set in later than normal. Dry the brakes as soon as possible by braking repeatedly.

Corrosion

Long periods of inactivity and little use can lead to rust on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads. Where the brake system is subjected to light stress or in the case of corrosion, clean the brake discs by braking fully several times at a high speed.

Brake system fault

If you notice that the braking distance suddenly increases and the brake pedal can be pressed down more fully, there may be a fault in the brake system. Visit a specialised service immediately and adjust your driving style to the extent of the damage and to limit the effect of the brakes.

Low brake fluid level

Insufficient brake fluid could cause faults in the brake system. The brake fluid level is controlled electronically **›› page 33, Brake system** (!).

Brake servo

The brake servo supplements the pressure you exert on the brake pedal. The brake servo only works when the engine is running.

Handbrake

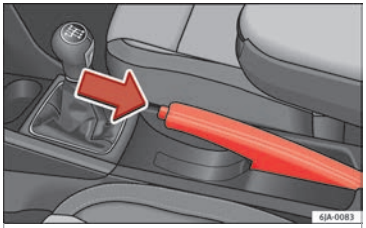

Fig. 90 Centre console: handbrake.

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up all the way.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and press the unlock button **at the same time** **›› Fig. 90**.

– Keep the button pressed down and push the lever all the way down.

The warning lamp lights up when the handbrake is applied with the ignition on (P).

Manual gearbox

Changing gears

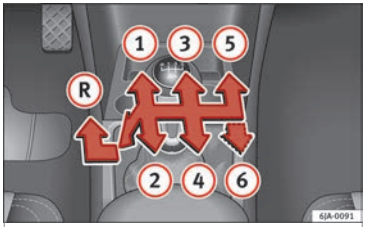

Fig. 91 Gear shift diagram of a 5- or 6-speed manual gearbox

When changing gear, always depress the clutch pedal fully and keep it pressed down to avoid excessive clutch wear.

In order to drive at an optimum RPM, follow the gear change indications ››› page 32.

Engage reverse gear only when the vehicle is stopped. On engaging reverse gear while the engine is running, first wait a moment with the clutch pedal pressed down fully to limit gear shift noise.

The reverse lights switch on when the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when moving forward. Risk of accident!

Note

Do not rest your hand on the gear lever while driving. The pressure of your hand could lead to premature wear of the gear system.

Automatic gearbox

Basic information

The gearbox changes up and down automatically. The gearbox can be set to **Tiptronic** mode. The gears can be changed manually in this mode ››› page 102.

The engine can only be **started** in positions **P** or **N**. If, on engaging the steering lock, switching the ignition on/off or starting the engine, the selector lever is not in these positions, the informative display will show **Move the selector lever to position P/N!**, or → **P/N** is shown on the general dash panel display.

At temperatures below -10 °C (14 °F), the engine can only be started in position **P**.

Move the selector lever to position **P** when parking the vehicle on a flat surface. On a slope, the handbrake should be firmly applied before moving the selector lever to the park position. This reduces the load on the lock mechanism while making it easier to move the selector lever from position **P**.

If, while the vehicle is moving, the selector lever is accidentally moved to position **N**, release the accelerator and wait for the engine to idle before moving it back into position.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never press the accelerator when selecting the automatic gearbox operating mode when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident!**
- **Never move the selector lever to positions R or P when driving. Risk of accident!**
- **If the vehicle is to be stopped with a gear selected and the engine idling (e.g. waiting or moving slowly at traffic lights), press down on the brake pedal because the transmission is not entirely interrupted when the engine is idling and the vehicle will tend to start moving.**
- **Apply the handbrake firmly and put the selector lever in position P before opening the bonnet and working on the vehicle with the engine running. Risk of accident! Strictly follow the safety instructions** **››› page 132, Engine compartment****.**
- **When stopping on a slope (hill), try not to stop the vehicle from moving by pressing the "accelerator" with a gear selected. This could overheat the clutch. If the clutch risks being burnt due to this force, it would switch off**

and the vehicle could move backwards. Risk of accident!

- **If you have to stop on a hill, press down on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle from moving.**
- **The drive wheels could lose traction on a slippery road surface when the kick-down function is activated. Risk of sliding!**

CAUTION

- **In DSG automatic gearboxes, the double clutch is protected from overloads. If the hill hold control is used, the clutches are subjected to greater force if the vehicle is at a standstill on a slope or suddenly accelerating on a slope.**
- **Should the clutches overheat, the symbol is shown on the informative display with a warning message Gear overheated. Stop! Instruction Manual! An audible warning is also heard. Stop the vehicle in this case, stop the engine and wait until the symbol has switched off. Danger of damage to the gearbox! You can continue driving once the symbol is switched off.**

Starting and driving

Starting

– Press and hold the brake pedal.

– Press and hold the interlock button on the selector lever knob and move the selector lever to position ››› page 101 before releasing the interlock button.

– Release the brake and press the accelerator.

Stopping

– The selector lever does not have to be moved to position **N** if the vehicle is stopped for a short period, e.g. at intersections. Applying the brake is enough. However, the engine must remain idling.

Parking

– Press the brake pedal.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Press the interlock button, move the selector lever to position **P** and release the button.

Kick-down feature

The kick-down feature allows maximum acceleration to be reached.

In any gear programme, press down fully on the accelerator for the automatic gearbox to activate the kick-down feature. This function takes priority over the gear programmes without taking into account the position of the selector lever (**D**, **S** or **Tiptronic**) and is used to reach maximum acceleration, using full engine power. Depending on the road speed and engine speed, the automatic gearbox shifts down and the vehicle accelerates. It only shifts up after the maximum engine speed has been reached.

Selector lever positions

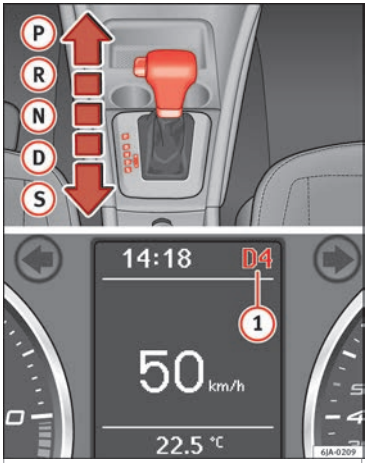

Fig. 92 Selector lever/Informative display: selector lever positions.

The current position of the selector lever is shown on the general instrument panel display (1) ››› Fig. 92. »

(P) – Parking position

In this position, the driven wheels are mechanically locked.

The parking position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

If you want to move the selector lever from this position, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob while pressing down on the brake pedal.

If the battery is drained, the selector lever cannot be moved from position **P**.

(R) – Reverse

Reverse gear must be engaged only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

To move the selector lever to position **R** from positions **P** or **N**, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob and press down on the brake pedal.

The reverse lights come on when the selector lever is in position **R** and the ignition is on.

(N) – Neutral (idling)

Neutral (idling) is engaged in this position.

To move the selector lever from position **N** (if the lever has remained in this position for more than 2 seconds) to position **D** or **R** at speeds of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and when the vehicle is stationary, press down on the brake pedal.

(D) – Drive (forwards)

In this position, the gearbox automatically changes to a lower or higher gear, depending on engine requirements, the driving speed and the gear shift programme.

To move the selector lever to position **D** from position **N** at speeds of less than 5 km/h (3 mph) and when the vehicle is stationary, press down on the brake pedal.

In some situations (e.g. on mountain roads or when towing a trailer or caravan), it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to the manual shift programme ››› page 102 so that the gear ratios can be selected manually to suit driving conditions.

(S) – Sports driving position

Shifting up later than usual makes full use of the engine power. This shifts down earlier in relation to position **D**.

To move the selector lever to position **S** from position **D**, press the interlock button on the selector lever knob.

Tiptronic gearbox

Fig. 93 Selector lever: Tiptronic.

The Tiptronic gearbox allows the driver to change gears manually using the selector lever.

Activating the manual gearbox

– From position **D**, push the selector lever to the right. The selected position of the selector lever is shown on the general instrument panel display together with the gear engaged (1) ››› **Fig. 92**.

Shifting up

– Push the selector lever gently forwards (+) ››› **Fig. 93**.

Shifting down

– Push the selector lever gently backwards (-) ››› **Fig. 93**.

The manual gearbox can be activated when the vehicle is either moving or stationary.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached.

On shifting up, the gear is only engaged when there is no risk of engine damage.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed down to the kick-down zone, the gearbox will shift down in line with the road speed and engine speed.

Note

The kick-down function is also available in manual shift mode.

Selector lever lock

Automatic selector lever lock

The selector lever is locked in the positions **P** and **N** when the ignition is on. Press down on the brake to unlock it. Remember, if the selector lever is in positions **P** and **N** then the warning lamp will light up on the general instrument panel ››› page 38.

When the selector lever merely moves through position **N** (e.g. when moved from **R** to **D**), the lever lock is not applied. This makes it possible, for example, to rock a stuck vehicle backwards and forwards. The lock is only applied if the brake is not pressed and the selector lever is moved to position **N** for more than 2 seconds.

The selector lever only locks when the is vehicle stationary or driving at a speed lower than 5 km/h (3 mph). At a higher speed, it automatically disconnects in the **N** position.

Interlock button

The interlock button on the selector lever knob prevents the driver from inadvertently engaging a gear. Press the button to unlock the selector lever.

Safety interlock for ignition key[1)]

After switching off the ignition, you can only remove the ignition key if the selector lever is in position **P**. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever is locked in position **P**.

Driving programmes

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled automatic gearbox. Shifting up or down depends on the programme selected.

For a **calm driving style**, the gearbox uses the most economic programme. The gearbox shifts up as quickly as possible and shifts down as late as possible, thus increasing driving economy.

With a **sporty driving style**, characterised by sudden acceleration, heavy acceleration, speeds that often increase and decrease and maximum speed, the gearbox adapts to this driving style when the accelerator is pressed down fully (kick-down) by shifting down as quickly as possible and can even shift down by several gears at once.

Selecting the best driving programmes is an endless job. Regardless of this, the driver can also make the gearbox switch to a more dynamic gear shift programme by pressing the accelerator quickly. This makes the automatic gearbox shift down into a lower gear than the one that would normally apply to the current speed, allowing for more rapid acceleration (e.g. to overtake another vehicle) without having to press the accelerator until the kick-down position. On shifting up in a corresponding driving style, the gearbox returns to the original programme.

When driving along mountain roads, the gearbox adapts to the gradients. This avoids having to frequently change gears when driving uphill. In Tiptronic mode, it is possible to »

1) Valid only for certain countries.

shift down manually when driving downhill to use the braking effect of the engine.

Back-up programme

A back-up programme exists in case of faults.

In the event of a fault in the gearbox electronics, it will continue to work in one of the corresponding back-up programmes. All segments of the screen are lit up or switched off.

The fault can be seen as follows:

- The gearbox only engages certain gears
- Reverse gear **R** cannot be engaged
- The manual gearbox switches off in the back-up programme

Note

If the gearbox switches to the back-up programme, visit an Authorised Service as soon as possible to solve the problem.

Run-in and economical driving

The first 1,500 km

Over the first 1,500 kilometres the engine must be run in.

Up to 1000 kilometres

– Do not drive at more than 3/4 of the maximum speed corresponding to the engaged gear, i.e. up to 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine speed.

– Do not drive at full speed.

– Avoid high engine speeds.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 to 1500 kilometres (600 to 900 miles)

– **Slowly** increase the engine speed until reaching the maximum permitted speed of the engaged gear, i.e. the maximum permitted engine speed.

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on, when all the moving parts have bedded in. How the vehicle is driven over approximately the first 1,500 kilometres (900 miles), determines the success of the process of running in the engine.

Even after running in, the vehicle should not be unnecessarily driven at **high engine speeds**. The maximum permitted engine speed is marked at the start of the red zone on the rev counter dial. The gear must be changed up when the red area is reached in vehicles with a manual gearbox. **Extremely** high engine speeds when accelerating are automatically limited, however the engine is not protected against high engine speeds produced by incorrectly changing to a lower gear, which could cause the engine to run at revs above the maximum permitted amount, and consequently result in damage to the engine.

Additionally, vehicles with a manual gearbox must also bear the following in mind: do not drive with the engine speed too **low**. Change down to a lower gear when the engine no longer runs smoothly. Observe the recommendations for changing gear **»» page 32, Recommended gear display**.

New tyres

New tyres must be submitted to “running in”, given that initially their grip is not yet at the maximum level. During the first 500 km (120 miles) drive very carefully.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not yet provide maximum friction capacity. First they must be “run in”. During the first 200 km (120 miles) drive very carefully.

CAUTION

All the information for speed and engine speed refers to an engine that operates at operating temperature. Do not run the engine at high engine speeds, neither when stopped or while driving.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds; changing to a higher gear sooner contributes to saving fuel, reduces operating noise and protects the environment.

Environmental friendliness

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and manufacture of your new SEAT.

Constructive measures to encourage recycling

- Joints and connections designed for easy dismantling
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling
- Increased use of single-grade materials.
- Plastic parts and elastomers are marked in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629.

Choice of materials

- Use of recycled materials.
- Use of compatible plastics in the same part if its components are not easily separated.
- Use of recycled materials and/or materials originating from renewable sources.
- Reduction of volatile components, including odour, in plastic materials.
- Use of CFC-free coolants.

Ban on heavy metals, with the exceptions dictated by law (Annex II of ELV Directive 2000/53/EC): cadmium, lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium.

Manufacturing methods

- Reduction of the quantity of thinner in the protective wax for cavities.
- Use of plastic film as protection during vehicle transport.
- Use of solvent-free adhesives.
- Use of CFC-free coolants in cooling systems.
- Recycling and energy recovery from residues (RDF).
- Improvement in the quality of waste water.
- Use of systems for the recovery of residual heat (thermal recovery, enthalpy wheels, etc.).
- The use of water-soluble paints.

Catalytic converter

An exhaust gas emission control system (catalytic converter) that functions perfectly is vitally important for vehicle operation that respects the environment.

Please observe the following indications:

- Refuel only using unleaded petrol in petrol engine vehicles **››› page 130, Unleaded petrol.**
- Do not add too much oil to the engine **››› page 136, Checking the engine oil level.**
- Do not switch off the ignition while driving.

If you are required to drive in a country where unleaded fuel is not available, when returning to a country where using a catalytic converter is obligatory, the catalytic converter must be replaced.

WARNING

- **Due to the high temperatures that the catalytic converter can reach, the vehicle must be stopped so that the catalytic converter does not come into contact with easily flammable material underneath the vehicle. Risk of fire!**
- **Never use substances for additional underbody protection or anti-corrosives for the exhaust pipes, the catalytic converter or the heat-resistant screens. Risk of fire!**

CAUTION

- **Never completely empty the tank! An irregular fuel supply can cause ignition faults, which can result in damage to a substantial amount of engine parts and the exhaust system.**

»

- **Refuelling just once with leaded petrol disables the exhaust system!**

Economical and environmentally friendly driving

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depends in large part on your driving style. By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. Some tips on how to help you reduce pollution while saving money are listed below.

Drive anticipating the traffic situation

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. When you anticipate situations, you have to brake less often and, thus, accelerate less. If it is possible, let the vehicle roll with a **gear engaged**, for example, if you see a red light ahead. The braking effect achieved in this way helps to reduce the wear of brakes and tyres; emissions and fuel consumption are reduced to zero (disconnection due to inertia).

Change gear early to save energy

An effective way of saving fuel is to change up *quickly* through the gears. Running the engine at high rpm in the lower gears uses an unnecessary amount of fuel.

Manual gearbox: shift up from first to second gear as soon as possible. We recommend that, whenever possible, you change to a higher gear upon reaching 2000 rpm. Follow the “recommended gear” indication that appears on the instrument panel **»» page 32, Recommended gear display**.

Avoid driving at high speed

We advise you not to drive at the top speed permitted by the vehicle. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

Avoid idling

It is worthwhile switching off the engine when waiting in a traffic jam, at level crossings or at traffic lights with a long red phase. The fuel saved after only 30 - 40 seconds is greater than the amount of fuel needed to restart the engine.

The engine takes a long time to warm up when it is idling. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

Periodic maintenance

Periodic maintenance work guarantees that, before beginning a journey, you will not consume more than the required amount of fuel. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A badly serviced engine can consume up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Avoid short journeys

To reduce the consumption and emission of polluting exhaust gases, the engine and the exhaust gas filtration systems should reach the optimum **operating temperature**.

With the engine cold, fuel consumption is proportionally higher. The engine does not warm up and fuel consumption does not normalise until having driven approximately *four* kilometres (2.5 miles). This is why we recommend avoiding short trips whenever possible.

Maintain the correct tyre pressures

Bear in mind that keeping the tyres at an adequate pressure saves fuel. If the tyre pressure is just one bar (14.5 psi/100 kPa) too low, fuel consumption can increase by as much as 5%. Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases tyre **wear** wear and impairs handling.

The tyre pressures should always be checked when the tyres are *cold*.

Do not use **winter tyres** all year round as they increase fuel consumption by up to 10%.

Avoid unnecessary weight

Given that every kilo of **extra weight** will increase the fuel consumption, it is advisable to always check the luggage compartment to make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

A roof rack is often left in place for the sake of convenience, even when it is no longer needed. At a speed of 100 km/h (62 mph) and 120 km/h (75 mph) your vehicle will use about 12% more fuel as a result of the extra wind resistance caused by the roof rack even when it is not in use.

Save electricity

The engine activates the alternator, which produces electricity. With the need for electricity, fuel consumption also increases. Because of this, always turn off electrical devices when you do not need them. Examples of devices that use a lot of electricity are: the fan at high speeds, the rear window heating and the seat heaters*.

Note

- **If you vehicle has *Start-Stop*, it is not recommended to switch this function off.**

- **It is recommended to *close the windows* when driving at more than 60 km/h (40 mph)**
- **Do not drive with your foot resting *on the clutch pedal*, as the pressure can make the plate spin, more fuel will be used and it can burn the clutch plate lining, causing a serious fault.**
- **Do not hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch, use the foot brake or hand brake, using the latter to start. The fuel consumption will be lower and you will prevent the clutch plate from being damaged.**
- **On descents, use the engine brake, changing to the gear that is more suitable for the slope. Fuel consumption will be “zero” and the brakes will not suffer.**

Wading and driving off-road

Driving through water

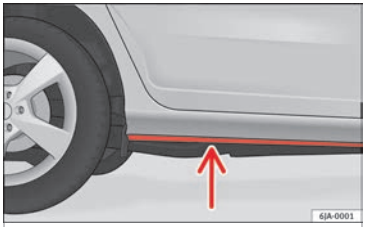

Fig. 94 Driving through water.

To prevent the vehicle from being damaged when driving through water (i.e. flooded roads), please observe the following:

- Determine the depth of the water before entering. Water can reach a maximum height of below the door sill ››› Fig. 94.
- Drive at a maximum pace of walking speed. Driving at a higher speed can cause a wave in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to enter the engine air intake system or other parts of the vehicle.
- Never stop in the water, never reverse and never stop the engine.
- Before driving through water deactivate the Start-Stop system ››› page 112.

⚠ WARNING

- **Driving through water, dirt and mud can reduce braking capability and prolong the braking distance – Risk of accident!**
- **Do not carry out any sudden or strong braking manoeuvres after driving through water.**
- **Clean and dry the brakes as soon as possible after driving through water by breaking intermittently. Carry out braking in order to dry the brakes and clean the brake discs only if traffic so permits. Do not put other drivers at risk.**

»

CAUTION

- **In the event of driving through water, parts of the vehicle can be seriously damaged, such as the engine, gearbox, catalytic converter, suspension or the electrical system.**
- **Oncoming vehicles that drive through water can cause waves that exceed your vehicle's permitted level for driving through water.**
- **There may be pot-holes mud or rocks under the water that can hinder or prevent driving through water.**
- **Do not drive through salt water. The salt can cause rust. All components that are exposed to salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.**

Note

After driving through water we recommend that you contact a specialised service for an inspection.

Preventing damage to the vehicle

In order to prevent damage to the vehicle, take special care:

- on roads that are in poor condition,
- when mounting kerbs,
- when approaching very steep ramps, etc.,
- with the parts of the vehicle situated on the lower part of the vehicle, i.e. the spoiler, the exhaust pipe.

This applies especially to vehicles with a very low suspension (sport) and when the vehicle is fully loaded.

Driver assistance systems

Braking and stability systems

Stability system (ESC)

Fig. 95 ESC system: TCS switch.

The ESC system increases control of the vehicle in emergency situations, e.g. during a sudden change in direction. Depending on the driving conditions, it reduces the risk of skidding and increases driving stability.

The system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares them with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. When irregularities occur, for example, if the vehicle begins to skid, the ESC brakes the appropriate wheel automatically.

The warning lamp on the general instrument panel starts flashing when the system is working.

The **stability (ESC)** system includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock brake system (ABS),
- Traction control system (TCS),
- Electronic differential lock (EDL),
- Hydraulic brake assist system (HBA),
- Hill hold control (HHC).

The ESC system cannot be switched on. The ›››**Fig. 95** button can only be used to switch off the TCS system. The warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if the TCS system is switched off.

The ASR should be switched on at all times. Only under certain circumstances should the system be switched off, e.g.

- driving with chains,
- driving in deep snow or on very soft surfaces,
- During the “swinging movement” required to remove a stuck vehicle

Switch the ASR back on as soon as possible.

Brake assist system (HBA)*

The HBA system is activated when you press down on the brake pedal suddenly. It increases braking power, helping to reduce braking distances. To reduce braking distance as much as possible, keep the brake pedal pressed down firmly until the vehicle comes to a standstill.

With the help of this system, the ABS is activated more quickly and more efficiently.

The brake assist function is deactivated automatically when the brake pedal is released.

Hill hold control (HHC)*

The HHC system makes it easier to start the vehicle on hills. The system maintains the brake pressure created by pressing down on the brake pedal for 2 seconds after it has been released. Your foot can be removed from the brake pedal and you can use the accelerator pedal and move away on a hill without having to use the handbrake. The brake pressure drops as the accelerator pedal is pressed. If the vehicle cannot be started, it will start to move backwards after 2 seconds.

The HHC is activated on gradients of over 5%, if the driver door is closed. It only works for starting on hills, moving both forward and in reverse. It is not activated during start-up down hill.

Anti-lock system (ABS)

The ABS system prevents the wheels locking during braking. This helps the driver keep control of the vehicle.

The driver is made aware of ABS assistance **by the pulsating of the brake pedal** and a characteristic noise.

Keep the brake pedal pressed down while the ABS is working. The ABS will switch off when the brake pedal is released. Never brake intermittently while the ABS is working!

Traction control system (ASR)

If the wheels start to slip, the TCS adapts the engine speed to the driving conditions. Particularly in unfavourable conditions, the TCS helps starting, accelerating and hill starts.

The TCS [1] warning lamp on the general dash panel flashes when the system is working.

[1] Valid for vehicles not fitted with the stability control system (ESC).

Electronic differential lock

If one of the wheels starts to skid, the EDL brakes that wheel, transmitting the driving force to the other wheels. This increases vehicle stability and improves driving stability.

To prevent the disc brake of the braking wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle will continue to function normally without EDL. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Parking aid*

Functioning

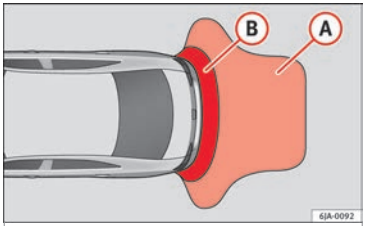

Fig. 96 Parking aid: range of the sensors.

Ultrasound sensors are used so that the parking aid system can calculate the distance between the rear bumper and an obstacle. The sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Sensor range

The warning begins at a distance of 160 cm from the obstacle (zone A ››› **Fig. 96**). As the obstacle is approached, the audible warning sounds with increasing frequency.

Within a distance of approximately 30 cm (zone B), a warning tone will sound continuously. Danger zone. **Stop reversing immediately!**

In vehicles factory-fitted with certain audio or radio-navigation system models, the distance from the obstacle is displayed graphically on the screen. See the audio or navigation system Instruction Manual.

In vehicles factory-fitted with a towing system, the rear area at which the system starts to indicate the obstacle is extended by around 5 centimetres. The length of the vehicle can be extended by a detachable towing bracket.

In vehicles factory-fitted with towing equipment, the sensors are deactivated when towing a trailer or caravan.

Switching the parking aid system on and off

Parking aid is switched on when the ignition is on and **reverse gear** engaged. This is confirmed by a short audible warning.

Parking aid is switched off when reverse gear is released.

⚠ WARNING

- **Parking aid does not free the driver from responsibility when parking or performing similar manoeuvres. Pay special attention to small children or animals, as the parking aid sensors may not always be able to detect them.**
- **Before reversing or parking, make sure there are no small obstacles, e.g. rocks, narrow pillars, towing brackets, etc. in front or behind the vehicle. These obstacles may not always be detected by the parking aid device.**
- **The surface of certain objects may not reflect the signals of the parking aid sensors. Therefore, people wearing clothing of this kind may not be detected by the parking aid system.**
- **Outside noise may interfere with the parking aid system. Under certain unfavourable circumstances, certain objects or people may not be detected.**

Note

- **If a constant sound at a higher frequency is emitted for 3 seconds each time the system is switched on, there is a fault in the system. Please take the vehicle to a specialised technical service to repair this fault.**

- **To ensure that the parking aid system works properly, the sensors must be kept clean (e.g. free of ice).**
- **If the parking aid system is switched on when the automatic gearbox selector lever is in position P, the acoustic signal will be interrupted (the car cannot be moved).**

Cruise control*

Introduction

The cruise control system allows you to drive at a constant speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) or higher without having to press the accelerator. However, the speed is only maintained within the margin permitted by the engine power and the braking effect of the engine.

The warning lamp lights up on the general instrument panel if cruise control is switched on.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or where roads conditions are poor (e.g. due to ice, aquaplaning, loose grit, snow). – Risk of accident!**
- **The programmed speed can only be re-established if it is not too high for current traffic conditions.**
- **Always switch the cruise control system off after using it in order to avoid involuntary use.**

CAUTION

- **The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when the vehicle is moving downhill. The vehicle tends to accelerate under its own weight. Therefore, shift down or use the brake pedal in good time to slow the vehicle.**

Note

- **In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the cruise control system cannot be switched on if the selector lever is in position P, N or R.**
- **In vehicles with a manual gearbox, the cruise control cannot be switched on if first gear or reverse gear is engaged.**

Setting speed

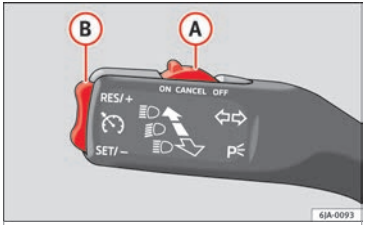

Fig. 97 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever: cruise control buttons.

Setting speed

– Move knob (A) ››› **Fig. 97** to the **ON** position.

– Briefly press rocker switch (B) in **SET** position when you have reached the speed you wish to set.

On releasing rocker switch (B) in **SET**, the current speed is stored and will remain constant without having to press the accelerator pedal.

Adjusting set speed

Increasing speed by pressing the accelerator pedal

– Press the accelerator to increase the speed of the vehicle.

– Release the accelerator and the previously programmed speed will be resumed.

If, when pressing the accelerator, the vehicle exceeds the programmed speed by more than 10 km/h (6 mph) for more than 3 minutes, the set speed will be deleted. The speed will have to be stored again.

Increasing speed by pressing switch (B)

– Press rocker switch (B) ››› Fig. 97 ››› page 111 in **RES**.

– If the button is held down in the **RES** position, the speed increases continuously. Release the switch when the required speed is reached. The speed is stored.

Setting a lower speed

– The set speed can be **reduced** by pressing switch (B) ››› Fig. 97 ››› page 111 in **SET**.

– If the button is held down in the **SET** position, the speed decreases continuously. Release the switch when the required speed is reached. The speed is stored.

– On releasing the switch at speeds of less than 30 km/h (19 mph), no speed will be set and the memory will be deleted. The vehicle must be moving at a speed of over 30 km/h (19 mph) and switch (B) pressed again to **SET** for it to be set.

The speed can be reduced by pressing the brake pedal, which temporarily switches off the cruise control.

Switching off cruise control temporarily

Cruise control **is switched off temporarily** by pressing switch (A) ››› Fig. 97 ››› page 111 in **CANCEL** or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed is stored.

To **recover** the set speed, briefly press switch (B) in **RES** once you have released the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching off cruise control completely

– Move knob (A) ››› Fig. 97 ››› page 111 to **OFF**.

Start-Stop* System

Functioning

Fig. 98 Instrument panel: Start-Stop system button

The Start-Stop system helps save fuel and reduce harmful and CO_2 emissions.

The system is automatically switched on every time the ignition is switched on.

The system automatically switches off the engine when the vehicle is stationary, e.g. waiting at traffic lights.

The current status of the Start-Stop system is displayed on the general instrument panel display.

Automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)

– Stop the vehicle (if necessary using the handbrake).

– Shift to neutral.

– Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine start up (Start phase)

– Press the clutch.

Switching the Start-Stop system on and off

The Start-Stop system can be switched on and off by pressing the Ⓐ OFF ››› **Fig. 98** button.

The warning lamp in the button will light up when the system is switched off.

If the vehicle is in Stop phase when the button is pressed, the engine will start immediately.

The Start-Stop system works under complex driving conditions that are difficult to detect without specialist technology. The set of necessary conditions for the correct operating of the Start-Stop system are indicated below.

Conditions for automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)

- Selector lever in neutral.
- Clutch pedal not pressed.
- Driver with seat belt fastened.
- Driver door closed.
- The bonnet closed.
- Vehicle stationary.
- The factory-fitted towing bracket is not electrically connected to a trailer.
- Engine at operating temperature.
- Vehicle's battery sufficiently charged.
- Vehicle not on a very steep slope
- Engine speed below 1,200 rpm.
- Vehicle battery temperature is neither too high nor too low.
- Sufficient brake system pressure.
- Difference between outside temperature and set interior temperature not too great
- Vehicle speed since the last time the engine started was above 3 km/h (2 mph).
- Particulate filter not being cleaned ››› **page 37**.
- Front wheels not overly turned (steering wheel turned less than three quarters of a turn)

Conditions for engine start up (Start phase)

- Clutch pedal pressed.
- Max./min. temperature set.
- Windscreen defrost function switched on.
- High blower speed.
- Start-Stop button pressed.

Conditions for automatic engine start up without driver involvement

- Vehicle moving at a speed of over 3 km/h (2 mph).
- Difference between outside temperature and interior temperature is too great
- Vehicle's battery insufficiently charged.
- Insufficient brake system pressure.

If the driver seat belt is unfastened for more than 30 seconds in Stop phase, the engine must be started using the ignition key. Please observe the messages on the general instrument panel display.

Warnings on the instrument panel display (valid for vehicles not fitted with an informative display)

FAULT: Start-Stop	Fault in the Start-Stop system
START-STOP IMPOSSIBLE	Engine cannot be automatically shut down
START-STOP ACTIVE	Automatic engine shut down (Stop phase)
SWITCH OFF IGNITION	Switch the ignition off
START MANUALLY	Start the engine manually

⚠ WARNING

- **If the engine is switched off, neither the brake servo nor the power steering will work.**
- **Do not move the vehicle when the engine is switched off.**

»

CAUTION

Switch off the Start-Stop system **››› page 107** **before driving through a pool of water on the road.**

Note

- **The battery temperature may reflect changes in outside temperature after several hours. If the vehicle has been stopped outside at temperatures below zero or in direct sunlight, for example, the battery temperature may take several hours to reach the values required for the correct operating of the Start-Stop system.**
- **If the Climatronic system is operating automatically, this could impair automatic engine shut down under certain conditions.**

Towing bracket device

Driving the vehicle with a trailer

Technical requirements

If your vehicle has a factory-fitted towing bracket or is equipped with a selection of SEAT Original Accessories, it meets all the relevant technical and legal requirements.

In vehicles with a towing bracket it is possible to remove the ball joint, situated (together with the special assembly instructions) in the housing for the spare wheel in the vehicle luggage compartment **››› page 150, Vehicle tool kit***.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pole power socket for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle. If the trailer you are going to use has a **7-pin connector**, the corresponding adaptor, acquired from the SEAT Original Accessories Catalogue, can be used.

If a towing bracket is to be retro-fitted to the car, it must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

Note

Any queries that may arise can be directed to an authorised SEAT dealer.

Trailer weight

Trailer weight

The combined vehicle and trailer must be balanced. To do so use the maximum permitted towing bracket load. An insufficient weight exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket will have a negative impact upon the response of the vehicle-trailer assembly on the road.

Weight distribution

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Ensure that the objects do not move.

If the towing vehicle is empty and the trailer loaded then the load distribution is incorrect. However, if these conditions cannot be avoided, drive very slowly.

Tyre pressure values

Correct the tyre pressure in your vehicle to “total load” **››› page 144, Life cycle of tyres**.

Trailer weight

Never exceed the authorised trailer weight under any circumstances **››› page 174, Technical specifications**.

The trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1000 m above sea level. Due to lower air density, engine power decreases depending on the increase in

altitude, this also reduces climbing ability, which requires a reduction of the weight of the vehicle with a trailer by 10% for every 1000 m increase in altitude. The weight of the assembly is calculated by adding the vehicle weight (loaded) to the trailer weight (loaded). Always drive with special care when towing a trailer.

The towed load and support load information that is displayed on the towing bracket manufacturers label are only values for the verification of the device. The correct figures for your specific vehicle, which are usually lower than these figures, are given in the documentation of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Exceeding the maximum established load per axle and the maximum towing bracket load in addition to the maximum permitted load or the load of the vehicle + trailer assembly can cause accidents and serious injuries.**
- **A sliding load can considerably affect the stability and safety of the vehicle + trailer assembly, resulting in accidents and serious injuries.**

Towing a trailer

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard rear vision mirrors. If this is not the case, you should have additional exterior mirrors fitted. Observe the relevant statutory requirements of the country you are in.

Headlights

Before starting a journey, also check the headlight beam settings with the trailer hitched up. Adjust the headlight range settings if necessary ››› **page 62, Range control of main lights**.

Driving speed

For your own safety do not drive faster than the maximum permitted speed indicated on the trailer.

At all times, immediately reduce speed if you detect the slightest swaying movement of the trailer. Never try to “return the trailer to a straight position” by accelerating.

Brakes

Brake in due course! If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes gently at first and then, firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by locking of trailer wheels. Change to a lower gear in good time before descending a slope in order to take advantage of the engine brake.

The trailer is incorporated into the vehicle's anti-theft alarm system:

- When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a towing bracket.
- When the trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket.
- When the vehicle electrical device and the towing bracket are operational.
- When the vehicle is locked and the vehicle's anti-theft alarm device is activated.

Once the electrical connection is interrupted with the vehicle trailer locked, the alarm sounds.

Always switch off the vehicle anti-theft alarm device before connecting or disconnecting a trailer. The vehicle anti-theft alarm device could cause the alarm to sound ››› **page 57, Anti-theft alarm system***.

Engine overheating

In the event that the coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the right section of the scale or to the red area, immediately reduce speed. If the control lamp flashes on the general instrument panel, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine. Wait several minutes and check the coolant level in the tank ››› **page 138**.

»

Please observe the following indications ››› page 35, Coolant level and temperature.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- **Adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions.**
- **An electrical installation that is connected incorrectly or by non-specialised personnel can prevent the connection of the current to the trailer and cause faults in the operation of the electrical system throughout the entire vehicle, leading to accidents and serious injury.**
- **All electrical work must be carried out only by specialised services.**
- **Never directly connect the trailer electrical device to the electrical sockets of the reverse driving lights or other sources of electrical current.**

CAUTION

- **Avoid corners, and sudden and sharp braking.**
- **Once the trailing arm has been removed, place the corresponding cover on the hole of the fastening point. This prevents dirt from entering the hole – see the trailer system assembly manual.**

Note

- **In the event of frequent journeys with a trailer, we recommend also having the vehicle inspected in between the service intervals.**
- **When connecting and disconnecting the trailer, the handbrake must be applied.**
- **For technical reasons, trailers with LED reverse lights cannot be incorporated into the vehicle anti-theft alarm system.**

Towing bracket device

Introduction

If the vehicle is equipped with a towing bracket device from the factory or is a genuine SEAT accessory, it meets all national technical and legal requirements for towing.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle. If the towing bracket is equipped with a **7-pin connector**, you can use the corresponding available adaptor that is a genuine SEAT accessory.

The towing device has a maximum vertical load of **50 kg**.

WARNING

- **Before driving with the ball-headed bar fitted, verify its correct assembly and placement in the clamping bush.**
- **Do not use the ball-headed bar if it is not correctly placed and fixed in the clamping bush.**
- **Do not use the towing device for towing if it is damaged or has missing parts.**
- **Do not modify or adapt the towing device connection.**
- **Never disengage the ball-headed bar with the trailer still hitched.**

CAUTION

Be careful not to damage the paint on the bumper when handling the ball-headed bar.

Description

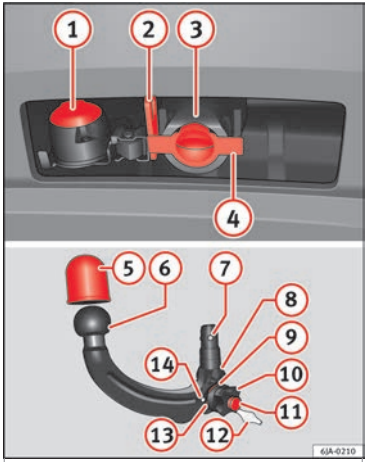

Fig. 99 Towing bracket device support for hitching/ball-headed bar.

The ball-headed bar is detachable. It is located in the spare wheel compartment or in the spare wheel compartment in the boot **››› page 150, Vehicle tool kit***.

Key to **››› Fig. 99**

1. 13-pin socket
2. Safety flange
3. Clamping bush
4. Clamping bush cap
5. Ball head cover
6. Ball-headed bar
7. Locking balls
8. Centred
9. Red marking on the manual regulator
10. Manual regulator
11. Key
12. Key slot cover
13. Red marking on the manual regulator
14. White marking on the ball-headed bar

Note

Contact an Authorised Service Partner if you lose your key.

Placing in service position

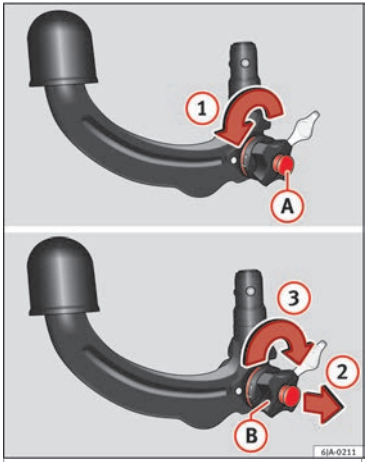

Fig. 100 Placing in service position. »

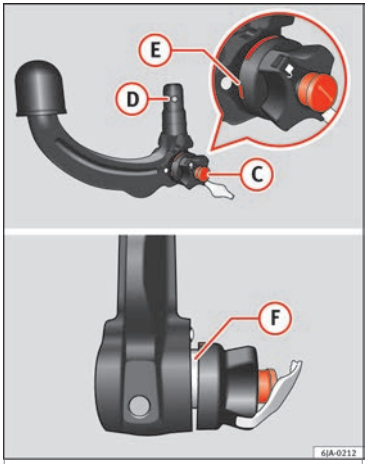

Fig. 101 Service position.

Before assembling, place the ball-headed bar in service position.

– Turn key (A) fully in the direction of arrow (1) ››› **Fig. 100**.

– Hold the ball-headed bar with your left hand.

– Pull manual regulator (B) outward in the direction of arrow (2) and turn it fully in the direction of arrow (3).

The manual regulator will remain in this position.

Service position ››› Fig. 101

- Key (C) is in an open position – the key arrow points to the "unlocked" symbol. The key cannot be removed from the key slot.
- The (D) locking balls may be fully inserted into the body of the ball-headed bar by applying some pressure.
- The red (E) marking on the manual regulator points towards the white marking on the ball-headed bar.
- Between the manual regulator and the body of the ball-headed bar there is a clearly visible space of approximately 4 mm (F).

Once the ball-headed bar has been positioned like this, it will be ready to be placed in the clamping bush.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the ball-headed bar if it cannot be correctly placed in the service position.

ⓘ CAUTION

The key cannot be removed from the manual regulator key slot when it is in the service position.

Assembling the ball-headed bar

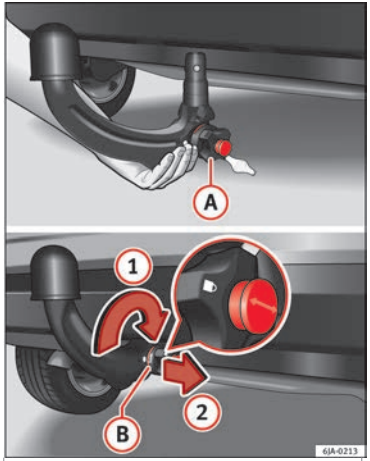

Fig. 102 Placing the ball-headed bar/locking and removing the key.

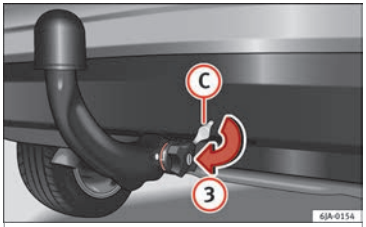

Fig. 103 Placing the key slot cover.

– Remove the cap from the clamping bush (4) ››› **Fig. 99** by pulling downwards.

– Place the ball-headed bar in the service position ››› **page 117**.

– Hold the ball-headed bar from underneath ››› **Fig. 102** and push it into the clamping bush as far as possible until you hear it click into place ››› ⚠.

The manual regulator (A) **automatically** turns in the opposite direction, adjusting to the ball-headed bar ››› ⚠.

– Switch off the manual regulator lock with key (B) by turning the key fully to the right in the direction of arrow (1) – the arrow in the key displays the “locked” symbol.

– Remove the key in the direction of arrow (2).

– Place cover (C) over the manual regulator lock in the direction of arrow (3) ››› **Fig. 103**.

– Verify the correct placement of the ball-headed bar ››› **page 119**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Do not hold the manual regulator with your hand when fitting the ball-headed bar since you could sustain injuries to your fingers.**
- **When mounting the ball-headed bar, always lock it with a key and remove the key from the slot.**
- **The ball-headed bar must not be in the service position with the key in the key slot.**
- **If the ball-headed bar is not placed in the service position you will not be able to place it in the clamping bush.**

CAUTION

When removing the key, always place the cover over the key slot of the manual regulator to prevent dirt from entering.

Note

Once removed, place the clamping bush cap in an appropriate location in the boot.

Verification of correct placement

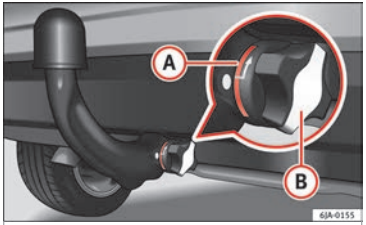

Fig. 104 Correct placement of the ball-headed bar.

Before using the ball-headed bar, ensure it is correctly fitted.

Ensure that:

- The ball-headed bar does not come out of the clamping bush in a “jerky” manner.
- The red mark (A) ››› **Fig. 104** on the manual regulator signals toward the white mark on the ball-headed bar.
- The manual regulator is adjusted to the ball-headed bar, leaving no space between them.
- The regulator is locked and the key has been removed.
- Cover (B) has been placed over the manual regulator lock. »

⚠ WARNING

Only use the towing bracket device when the ball-headed bar is properly fitted!

Disassembly of the ball-headed bar

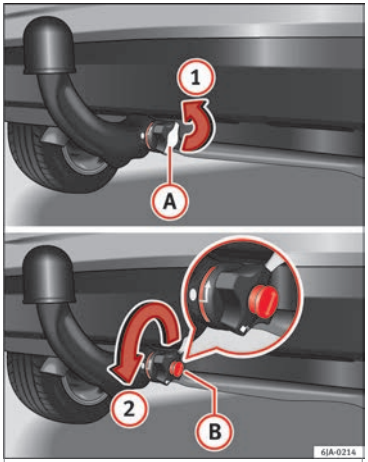

Fig. 105 Remove the key slot cover/unlock with the key.

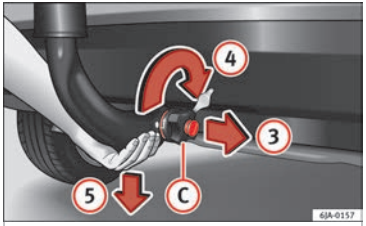

Fig. 106 Unblock the ball-headed bar.

– Remove cover (A) from over the regulator key slot in the direction of arrow (1) ››› **Fig. 105**.

– Insert key (B) in the key slot.

– Open the manual regulator lock by turning key (B) fully to the left in the direction of arrow (2). The arrow on the key points to the "unlocked" symbol.

– Hold the ball-headed bar from underneath ››› **Fig. 106** and remove manual regulator (C) with your other hand in the direction of arrow (3).

– Turn the removed regulator fully in the direction of arrow (4) and hold it firmly in this position.

– Remove the ball-headed bar from the clamping bush, pulling downward in the direction of arrow (5).

The ball-headed bar should be placed in the service position so that it is ready to be inserted into the clamping bush ››› ❗.

– Place the cover over the clamping bush (4) ››› **Fig. 99**.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never leave the ball-headed bar unsecured in the boot. It could be damaged in the event of sudden braking, putting the safety of passengers at risk!**
- **Never disassemble the ball-headed bar with the trailer still hitched.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **If you do not turn the manual regulator fully, it will return to its original position when the ball-headed bar is removed. The manual regulator will be stuck to the ball-headed bar and you will not be able to put it in the service position. Therefore, before you assemble it again, you must place the ball-headed bar in this position.**
- **When disassembling, place the cap on the clamping bush holder's key slot. This way you will prevent dirt from entering the clamping bush.**

Note

- **Before disassembling the ball-headed bar, we recommend placing the cover on the ball head.**

- **Clean the ball-headed bar thoroughly before returning it to the on-board toolbox.**

Use and maintenance

Cover the clamping bush with the cap to prevent dirt from entering.

Before hooking on the trailer, check the ball head and, if necessary, lubricate it with adequate lubricant.

Place the protective cover over the ball head when storing the bar. This way, you will avoid getting the boot dirty.

If it gets dirty, clean and dry the clamping bush thoroughly with an appropriate product.

CAUTION

The top part of the clamping bush opening is lubricated. Be careful not to remove this lubrication.

Advice

Care and maintenance

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Accessories, replacement parts and repairs

If you wish to retrofit accessories in the vehicle, or if a part of the vehicle has been replaced by a new part or technical modifications are required, the following instructions must be taken into account:

- **Before** purchasing accessories or spare parts and **before** making technical modifications, always request advice from an Authorised SEAT dealer ››› ⚠.
- In the event that technical modifications are carried out on the vehicle, the instructions and regulations specified by the company, SEAT, must be observed.

No damage will be caused to the vehicle if the established procedures are respected, which guarantees safe driving and operation. After the modifications are carried out, the vehicle will comply with the restrictions and regulations of the highway code. More information can be obtained at an Authorised SEAT dealer, where all jobs required can be carried out appropriately.

Vehicle improvements and modifications

The owner must keep the technical documentation regarding the modifications carried out on the vehicle so it can be handed over to those responsible for processing end-of-life vehicles. This ensures end-of-life processing of the vehicle, while protecting the environment.

Work done on the electrical components and software can cause disruption in operations. Due to the interconnection of electronic components, their malfunction can also impair systems that are not directly affected. This can adversely affect reliability of the vehicle, and can produce excessive wear of the parts.

Damage caused by technical modifications that are not made with the consent of SEAT will be excluded from the warranty – see warranty certificate.

⚠ WARNING

- **Jobs or modifications unduly carried out on your vehicle can cause disruption to operations - Risk of accident!**
- **We recommend that you use only expressly authorised SEAT Accessories and SEAT Original Spare Parts for your vehicle. The reliability, safety and compatibility with your vehicle of SEAT original spare parts and accessories has been verified.**
- **Despite the continuous observation of the market, we cannot judge nor guarantee the suitability of other products for your vehicle, be they authorised products or products approved by a state testing facility.**

Note

SEAT original spare parts and accessories can be purchased at authorised SEAT dealers where the purchased parts can also be fitted.

Modifications and effects of the airbag system

In the adjustment and modification, respect the SEAT directive.

Modifications and corrections of the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof or bodywork must be carried out at authorised SEAT workshops. Components of the airbag system can be found in these parts of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Airbag modules must never be repaired. They must be replaced.**
- **Never fit components of the airbag system removed from old vehicles or those originating from a recycling process in the vehicle.**

- **The modification of the suspension of the vehicle wheels, including the use of non-permitted combinations of tyres and rims can alter the operation of the airbag system and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident.**
- **During all jobs on the airbag system, in addition to the removal and fitting of parts of the system in the course of other repair jobs, parts of the airbag system can be damaged. Therefore in the event of an accident, this may cause the airbags to activate incorrectly or not activate at all.**

Care and cleaning

Introduction

Regular and suitable care helps to **maintain the useful life** of your vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

We recommend you use cleaning products from the SEAT Original Accessories programme available in SEAT dealers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage the health if misused.**
- **Always keep car care materials in a safe place out of the reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**
- **When washing the car during the winter season: Moisture and ice on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident!**
- **The ignition must always be switched off when the car is washed. Risk of accident!**
- **Do not clean the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp metal parts!**
- **Perfumes and air fresheners inside the vehicle may be harmful to health at high temperatures in the interior.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Check the colour-fastness of your clothing to avoid damaging or visibly staining the fabric (leather), upholstery and fabric trim.**
- **Cleaning products containing solvents may damage the material being cleaned.**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Risk of damage to paintwork.**
- **If washing the vehicle with a hose in winter, do not direct the jet of water directly at the locks or at the door seals or bonnet. Risk of freezing.**
- **Do not use sponges for removing insects or abrasive household sponges, etc. on painted surfaces. Risk of damage to the painted surface!**
- **Do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window in areas where heating elements or the aerial are located. This could cause damage and, in the case of the aerial, radio and navigation system reception faults.**
- **Do not clean the inside of the window with sharp objects or corrosive or acidic cleaning products. Risk of damaging the heating elements or the aerial.**
- **Do not attach any fragrance or air freshener to the dash panel. Risk of damage to the dash panel!**
- **To avoid damaging the parking aid system sensors, spray them only briefly at a minimum distance of 10 cm when cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure or steam cleaner.**
- **Do not clean the roof panel with a brush. Risk of damage to the panel surface!**

For the sake of the environment

- **The packaging of the product used to care for your vehicle is hazardous waste. It must be disposed of according to current local law.**
- **Only wash the car in special wash bays.**

»

Note

- **Remove stains from fresh ball-pen and other inks, lipstick, shoe cream and similar stains on the fabric (leather), upholstery and fabric trim as soon as possible.**
- **We recommend that you visit an authorised SEAT dealer to clean and care for the interior of your vehicle, due to the problems that may arise when cleaning and caring for the interior of your vehicle and to the utensils and knowledge required.**

Washing the vehicle

The best protection of the vehicle from the harmful influences of the environment involves **frequent** washing and waxing. The frequency with which the vehicle is washed depends on many different factors, such as:

- Frequency of use
- Type of parking (garage, underneath trees, etc.)
- Time of year
- Weather conditions
- Environmental conditions

The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials remain on the paintwork, the more damage they do. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect.

After the winter season, it is important to have the **underside of the vehicle** washed thoroughly.

Automatic car washes

Your vehicle can be washed in an automatic car wash.

Before going through an automatic car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows, etc.

If the vehicle has special accessories such as spoilers or a roof rack or two-way radio aerial, etc., it is advisable to consult the car wash operator beforehand.

The windscreen wiper rubbers must be degreased after going after the car wash and waxing.

Washing by hand

When washing the car by hand, use plenty of water to soften the dirt first and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a **sponge**, **glove** or **brush**. Start on the roof and work down. Use only slight pressure when cleaning the painted surfaces of the vehicle. A **car shampoo** should only be used for very persistent dirt.

Rinse the sponge or glove thoroughly and often.

Wheels, sills and underside should be cleaned last. Use a second sponge for this.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly and then dry with a chamois.

Washing with high-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This particularly applies to the **operating pressure** and the **distance** of the spray from the surface of the vehicle. Do not hold the spray nozzle too close to the parking aid system sensors and soft materials, such as rubber hoses or insulating material.

WARNING

Do no use a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a “rotating jet”!

CAUTION

Do not use water hotter than +60 °C (140 °F). Risk of damage to the vehicle!

Waxing and polishing of the vehicle paintwork

Care

To a great extent, good waxing protects the vehicle surface from the harmful effects of the environment.

The vehicle must be treated with a high quality, hard wax when water no longer forms droplets on clean paintwork.

A new coat of high quality, hard wax can be applied to the clean, painted surface only when it has fully dried. Even if a wax solution is used regularly in the car wash, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of wax at least twice a year.

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint.

CAUTION

- **Never wax the windows.**
- **Do not use polishes and hard wax on painted parts with a matt finish or on plastic parts.**
- **Do not polish your vehicle in a sandy or dusty environment.**

Cleaning chrome

Clean the chrome first with a clean cloth and then buff up with a soft, dry cloth. If this does not clean the chrome properly, use a special chrome cleaner.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome in a dusty environment or it could be scratched.

Paint damage

Minor damage to the paint, such as scratches or stone chips, should be touched up without delay using paint.

Suitable **touch-up brushes** or **sprays** for the colour of your vehicle can be purchased from authorised SEAT dealers.

Note

We recommend you leave paint damage repairs to a SEAT Authorised Service.

Plastic parts

Exterior plastic parts will come clean using a damp cloth. If this is not sufficient, plastic parts can also be treated with special solvent-free **plastic cleaning detergents**.

Do not use paint cleaners, polishes or wax on plastic parts.

Windows and exterior mirrors

Remove snow and ice from windows and rear vision mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid damaging the surface of the glass, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.

The windows should also be cleaned on the inside at regular intervals.

Use a separate cloth or chamois to dry the windows and rear vision mirrors.

Do not use the chamois used to polish the bodywork to dry the windows. Waxing and polishing residues could cause smears on the glass and hinder visibility.

CAUTION

- **Never use hot or boiling water to remove snow and ice from the windows. Risk of cracking glass!**

»

- **Make sure you do not damage the paintwork on the vehicle on removing snow and ice from the windows and rear vision mirrors.**
- **Do not remove the snow or ice dirty with thick particles, e.g. gravel, sand or road salt, from windows and mirrors. Risk of damage to the glass and mirror surfaces.**

Radio reception and aerial

In vehicles factory-fitted with an audio or navigation system, the aerial may be installed in different places:

- inside the rear window next to the heating elements,
- on the roof of the vehicle.

Headlights

Use soap and clean, hot water to clean the front headlights.

CAUTION

- **Never rub the headlights to dry them and do not use sharp objects to clean the plastic glass material. These could damage the protective paint and cause the headlights to crack.**
- **Do not use aggressive cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the glass. This could damage the headlights.**

Care of rubber seals

The weatherstrips on doors and windows will remain pliable and last longer if they are occasionally treated with a suitable rubber care product. This will prevent premature ageing and leaks. If they are properly cared for, the seals will be less likely to freeze up in the winter.

Door lock cylinder

Special products must be used to defrost lock cylinders.

Note

- **Make sure, when washing the vehicle, that the least amount of water possible enters the lock cylinders.**
- **We recommend the use of products from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories to care for the door lock cylinder.**

Wheels

Wheel trims

If you wash the vehicle regularly, you should also thoroughly wash the wheel trim. Regularly remove any brake dust and road salt from the wheels, otherwise the wheel material could be damaged. Repair any damage to the wheel paintwork immediately.

Alloy wheels

After thorough washing, treat the wheels with a protective product for alloy wheels. Do not use abrasive products to care for the wheels.

WARNING

Moisture, ice and road salt may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

Heavy dirt on the wheels could lead to their misalignment. This could result in vibrations being transmitted to the steering wheel that under certain conditions may cause premature steering wear. This dirt must be removed.

Note

We recommend you leave paint damage repairs to a SEAT Authorised Service.

Underbody sealant

The underside of the vehicle is coated to permanently protect it from chemical and mechanical agents.

Given that damage to the **protective coating** during driving cannot be completely ruled out, we recommend you check the condition of the protective coating on the underbody and suspension at regular intervals, preferably before the start and end of the coldest season of the year.

Authorised SEAT dealers have suitable **special products** and the necessary facilities and are aware of the techniques required for their application. We therefore recommend all touch-up work or additional anti-corrosion measures be performed by an authorised SEAT dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Do not apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, particulate filter or heat shields on the exhaust system. Once the engine has reached operating temperature, these substances could catch fire. Risk of fire!

Cavity waxing

All cavities on the vehicle exposed to corrosion are permanently factory-protected by a **wax solution**.

This wax solution does not need to be checked or touched up. Should wax run out of the cavities at high ambient temperatures, remove it using a plastic scraper and clean away any stains using lighter fluid.

⚠ WARNING

Note the regulations concerning safety and environmental protection if you use lighter fluid to remove the wax. Risk of fire!

Leatherette and upholstery

Leatherette can be cleaned with a damp cloth. If this is not sufficient, these parts should only be cleaned with **solvent-free plastic care and cleaning products**.

Textile covers and trim parts on doors, boot lid, etc. can be cleaned with special detergents, e.g. dry foam. A soft sponge or brush or a micro-fibre cloth for normal cleaning can be used. Use special products to clean the headliner.

The dye used in many garments, for example dark jeans, is not always sufficiently colourfast. Seat upholstery (fabric and leather), especially when light-coloured, may visibly discolour if the dye comes out of clothing, even in normal conditions. This is not an upholstery defect but indicates that the dye in the item of clothing is not solid enough.

Heated seat upholstery

Do not clean the seat upholstery with **damp products**, as this could damage the seat heating system.

Clean the upholstery with special products, e.g. dry foam, etc.

Natural leather

Leather should be looked after from time to time, depending on its use.

Normal cleaning

Moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

More stubborn dirt

Do not let water soak through the leather or penetrate the seams.

Dry it with a soft, dry cloth. »

Removing stains

Remove fresh **water-based** stains such as coffee, tea, juices, blood, etc. with an absorbent cloth or kitchen roll. Use the special detergent to clean dried-on stains.

Remove fresh **fat-based** stains such as butter, mayonnaise, chocolate, etc. with an absorbent cloth or paper towel or use the special detergent if the stain has not yet soaked through the surface.

Use a grease-dissolving product to treat **dried-in, fat-based stains**.

Treat **less common stains** such as ball-pen and other inks, felt-tip pens, nail polish, emulsion paint, shoe cream etc. with a special leather stain remover.

Leather care

The leather should be treated regularly (about twice a year) with a leather-care product.

Apply the protective product very sparingly.

Dry the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

CAUTION

- **Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods so that it does not lose its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period outdoors, cover the leather so that it does not lose its colour.**
- **Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can leave permanent scratches and rough marks on the surface of the leather.**
- **Use of a mechanical steering wheel lock can damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.**

Note

- **Use a suitable impregnating cream with ultra-violet protection at regular intervals and after cleaning. The cream will nourish and moisturise the leather, keep it supple and able to breathe. In addition, it will also help to protect the surface of the leather.**
- **Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months and remove fresh dirt as necessary.**
- **Preserve the colour of the leather. A special coloured cream for leather will renew the colour of more heavily worn areas as required.**
- **Leather is a natural material with specific properties. During vehicle use, the appearance of parts of the leather covers may change; folds or wrinkles may appear as a result of their use.**

Seat belts

Keep the seat belts clean!

Wash soiled seat belts with mild, soapy water, removing any heavier dirt with a soft brush.

Check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.

Very soiled belts may not retract properly.

WARNING

- **The seat belts should never be removed from the vehicle for cleaning.**
- **Never clean using chemical products, as chemical detergents destroy the fabric. Ensure that the seat belts do not come into contact with corrosive fluids such as acids, etc.**
- **If you find any damage to the belt webbing, belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, the belt in question must be replaced by an Official Service.**
- **Make sure that the inertia reel seat belts are completely dry before allowing them to retract.**

Checking and refilling levels

Fuel

Introduction

The correct type of fuel for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap, along with the tyre size and pressure ››› Fig. 107 B.

⚠ WARNING

Observe all relevant statutory regulations on transporting spare fuel canisters. For safety reasons, we do not recommend carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. The canister could be damaged in an accident and fuel may leak. Risk of fire!

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Never completely empty the tank! An irregular fuel supply can cause ignition faults, which can result in damage to a substantial amount of engine parts and the exhaust system.**
- **If any fuel is spilt onto the paintwork of the vehicle, it should be removed immediately. Risk of damage to paintwork!**

Refuelling

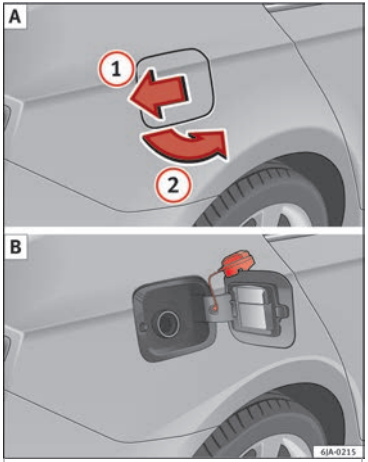

Fig. 107 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: fuel tank flap/fuel tank flap with tank unscrewed cap attached.

Vehicles with a fuel cap with key

– Press the flap in the direction of the arrow (1) ››› Fig. 107.

– Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (2).

– Hold onto the fuel tank cap with one hand and unlock it using the ignition key, turning it anti-clockwise.

– Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise and place it on top of the tank flap ››› Fig. 107 B.

– Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel feed tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the automatic filler nozzle cuts out ››› ⓘ.

– Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel feed tube and place it back on the pump.

– Screw the tank cap clockwise until it clicks into place.

– Hold onto the fuel tank cap with one hand and lock it using the ignition key, turning it clockwise.

– Press the tank flap with your hand to close it.

– Check that the fuel flap is correctly closed.

Vehicles with a keyless fuel cap (the side flap will unlock using the central locking system)

– Once the vehicle has been unlocked using the central locking button, press the fuel flap in the direction of the arrow (1) ››› Fig. 107.

– Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (2).

»

– Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise and place it on top of the tank flap ››› Fig. 107 B.

– Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel feed tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the automatic filler nozzle cuts out ››› ❶.

– Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel feed tube and place it back on the pump.

– Screw the tank cap clockwise until it clicks into place.

– Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

– Check that the fuel flap is properly closed.

CAUTION

- **Switch off the auxiliary heater (heater and independent heater) before filling the tank.**
- **The fuel tank is full as soon as the automatic filler nozzle cuts out. Do not continue filling, as this will fill the expansion chamber.**

Note

The fuel tank capacity is around 55 litres, of which 7 litres are the reserve.

Unleaded petrol

Your vehicle must only be run on **unleaded petrol** that complies with the Standard **EN 228** (in Germany, also **DIN 51626 – 1**, or **E10** for unleaded petrol with **95** and **91** octane rating (RON) or **DIN 51626 – 2**, or **E5** for unleaded petrol with **95** and **98** RON).

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol (95/91 RON)

Use unleaded petrol with **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with **91** RON can also be used, although this will result in a slight loss of power.

If, as an emergency measure, you have to fill the tank with petrol with a lower RON to that prescribed, use only moderate engine speeds and light throttle. High engine speed and full throttle can seriously damage the engine! Fill up with petrol with the correct RON as soon as possible.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol (min. 95 RON)

Use unleaded petrol with **95** RON.

If unleaded petrol with **95** RON is not available, you can fill up with petrol with **91** RON as an emergency measure. In this case, use only moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. High engine speed and full throttle can seriously damage the engine! Fill up with petrol with the correct RON as soon as possible.

Petrol with a RON below **91** cannot be used, even as an emergency measure. Risk of seriously damaging the engine!

Unleaded petrol with higher RON

Unleaded petrol with a higher RON to that prescribed can be used without limits.

In vehicles running on prescribed unleaded petrol with **95/91 RON**, there is no notable increase in power or lower fuel consumption when petrol with a RON higher than **95** is used.

In vehicles running on prescribed unleaded petrol with **min. 95 RON**, there is an increase in power and a lower fuel consumption when petrol with a RON higher than **95** is used.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol (98/(95) RON)

Use unleaded petrol with **98** RON. Unleaded petrol with **95** RON can also be used, although this will result in a slight loss of power.

If unleaded petrol with **98** or **95** RON is not available, you can fill up with petrol with **91** RON as an emergency measure. In this case, use only moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. High engine speed and full throttle can seriously damage the engine! Fill up with

petrol with the correct RON as soon as possible.

Petrol with a RON below **91** cannot be used, even as an emergency measure. Risk of seriously damaging the engine!

Petrol additives

The quality of the fuel influences the behaviour, power and service life of the engine. This is why the petrol you use should carry suitable additives already included by the petrol industry, free of metals. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good-quality petrol with metal-free additives is not available or engine problems arise, the necessary additives must be added when refuelling ››› ❗.

Not all petrol additives have been shown to be effective. The use of unsuitable petrol additives may cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Metal additives should never be used. Metal additives may also be contained in petrol additives for improving anti-detonation ratings or octane ratings ››› ❗.

SEAT recommends “genuine Volkswagen Group Fuel Additives for petrol engines”. These additives can be bought at SEAT dealers, where information on how to use them can also be obtained.

CAUTION

- **Do not refuel if the filler indicates that the fuel contains metal. LRP (lead replacement petrol) fuels contain high concentrations of metal additives. Using them may damage the engine!**
- **All SEAT vehicles with petrol engines can only run on unleaded petrol. Refuelling just once with leaded petrol disables the exhaust system!**
- **Use of petrol with a lower RON to that prescribed could damage the engine components.**
- **Fuels marked as containing metal on the garage fuel pump cannot be used. Risk of damage to most engine parts or the exhaust system!**
- **The use of unsuitable additives in petrol can cause damage to most engine parts or the exhaust system.**

Diesel fuel

Your vehicle can only run on **diesel fuel** that complies with the Standard **EN 590** (in Germany, also **DIN 51628**, in Austria also **ÖNORM C 1590**, in Russia also **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004**).

Winter driving – winter-grade diesel

In winter use diesel fuel that complies with the Standard **EN 590** (in Germany, also **DIN 51628**, in Austria also **ÖNORM C 1590**, in Russia also **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004**). “Winter-grade diesel” still performs well at -20 °C (-4 °F).

In countries with other weather conditions, diesel is often available that behaves differently with regards to the temperature. The authorised SEAT dealers and petrol stations in each country will inform you on the normal diesel fuel of the country in question.

Preheating the fuel filter

The vehicle is fitted with a glow plug system for the fuel filter. Therefore, the reliability of the diesel is ensured at ambient temperatures of down to approximately -25 °C (-13 °F).

Fuel additives

Fuel additives, known as “thinners” (petrol or similar substances) should not be mixed with the diesel fuel.

CAUTION

- **Even one tankful of diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard could damage engine parts, the fuel system and the exhaust system!**
- **If fuel different to the prescribed diesel fuel (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake, never start the engine or switch on the ignition! Risk of** »

serious damage to the engine! Contact an authorised SEAT dealer to clean the engine fuel system.

- Water allowed to collect in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.
- Your vehicle is not prepared for use of biofuel (RME) and, therefore, this fuel must not be used for refuelling or driving. The use of biofuel (RME) could cause serious damage to the engine or the fuel system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment, e.g. when checking and refilling fluids. Therefore, always observe the warnings and follow all general safety precautions. The engine compartment is a dangerous area.

⚠ WARNING

- Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Risk of scalding! Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
- Engage neutral in vehicles with manual gearbox and move the selector lever to position P in vehicles with automatic gearbox.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be closed when the vehicle is moving. Therefore, after closing the bonnet always check that it is properly secured.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly. Risk of accident!
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch hot engine parts. Risk of burns!
- Never spill fluids on hot engine compartments. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. antifreeze in coolant)!
- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system, especially when working on the battery.
- Never touch the radiator fan when the engine is hot. The fan may start running suddenly!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulating materials such as a blanket. Risk of fire!
- Do not unscrew the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. The cooling system is under pressure!
- Protect face, hands and arms from any hot steam or hot coolant released by covering the cap with a large, thick rag when opening the expansion tank.
- Do not leave any objects, such as cloths or tools, in the engine compartment.
- When working underneath the vehicle, secure it so that it cannot roll away and support it safely on suitable supports. The hydraulic jack is not sufficient for this purpose. Risk of injuries!
- If any tests have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from rotating parts, such as the drive belt, alternator and radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. You should also note the following:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Keep away from moving engine parts when wearing jewellery, loose clothing or long hair. Risk of fatal injuries! All jewellery must be removed, hair tied back and close-fitting clothing worn.
- Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary.
  - Always disconnect the battery from the on-board network.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near naked flames.
  - Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.

CAUTION

- **When topping up fluids, make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. Otherwise this can cause serious malfunctions or engine damage!**
- **Never open the bonnet using the release catch. Risk of damage!**

For the sake of the environment

Due to the environmentally-friendly disposal of fluids, the equipment necessary and the knowledge required, let an authorised SEAT dealer change fluids during service inspections of the vehicle.

Note

- **Please contact an authorised SEAT dealer with any doubts regarding fluids.**
- **Fluids of the correct specifications can be acquired from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories.**

Opening and closing the bonnet

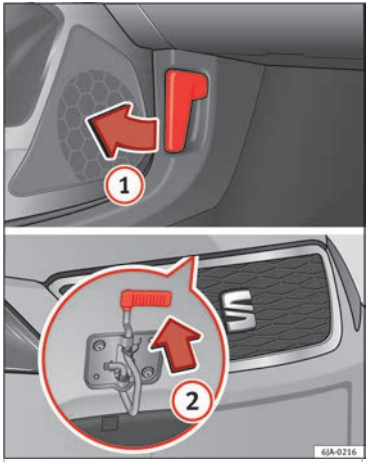

Fig. 108 Unlocking the bonnet.

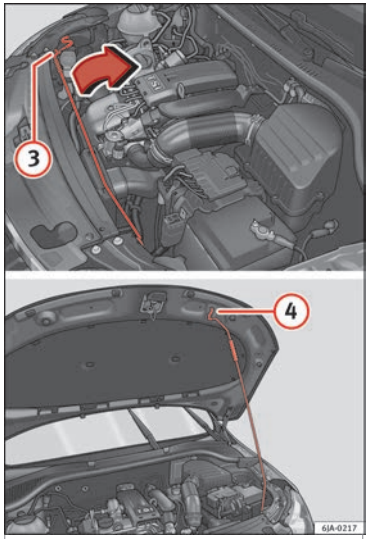

Fig. 109 Locking the bonnet.

Opening the bonnet

– Open the front left door.

– Pull the lever (1) »» **Fig. 108** under the dash panel in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are not lifted »

away from the glass. Otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

– Pull the release catch in the direction of the arrow (2) ››› **Fig. 108** and the bonnet will be released.

– Hold and lift the bonnet.

– Remove the support strut (3) ››› **Fig. 109** from its fastening in the direction of the arrow and secure the raised bonnet so that the end of the strut hooks onto the opening in the bonnet (4).

Closing the bonnet

– Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the support strut keeping the bonnet open and insert it into its fastening (3).

– Let the bonnet drop from a height of around 20 cm into the catch **Do not press down afterwards!**

– Check that the bonnet is correctly closed.

Checking fluid levels

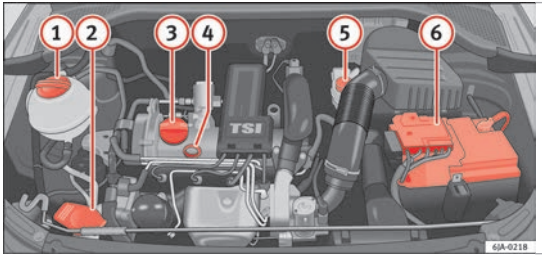

Fig. 110 Diagram for the location of the various elements.

From time to time, the levels of the different fluids in the vehicle must be checked. Never fill with incorrect fluids, otherwise serious damage to the engine may be caused.

(1) Coolant expansion tank 138
(2) Window washer water tank 139
(3) Engine oil filler cap 137
(4) Engine oil level dipstick 136
(5) Brake fluid reservoir 139
(6) Battery 140

The checking and replenishment of the service fluids are carried out on the components mentioned above. These operations are described in the ››› **page 132**.

Overview

You will find further explanations, instructions and restrictions on the technical specifications as of ››› **page 174**.

Note

The layout of the engine compartment is very similar to all petrol and diesel engines.

Radiator fan

The radiator is driven by an electric motor and controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

After the engine has been stopped and the ignition switched off, the radiator fan may continue running for around 10 minutes.

Engine oil

General notes

The engine comes with a special, multi-grade oil that can be used all year round.

Because the use of high-quality oil is essential for the correct operation of the engine and its long useful life, when topping up or changing oil, use only those oils that comply with VW standards.

The specifications (VW standards) set out in the following page should appear on the container of the service oil; when the container displays the specific standards for petrol and diesel engines together, it means that the oil can be used for both types of engines.

We recommend that the oil change indicated in the Maintenance Programme, be performed by a technical service or specialised workshop.

The correct oil specifications for your engine are listed in the ››› page 136, Oil properties.

Service intervals

Service intervals can be flexible (LongLife service) or fixed (dependent on time/distance travelled).

If the PR code that appears on the back of the Maintenance Programme booklet is QG1, this means that your vehicle has the LongLife service programmed. If it has the codes QG0 or QG2, the service interval is dependent on time/distance travelled.

Flexible service intervals (LongLife service intervals*)

Special oils and processes have been developed which, depending on the characteristics and individual driving profiles, enable the extension of the oil change service (LongLife service intervals).

Because this oil is essential for extending the service intervals, it **must only** be used observing the following indications:

- Avoid mixing it with oil for fixed service intervals.
- Only in exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ››› page 136 and LongLife oil is not available, it is permitted to top up (once) with oil for **fixed service intervals** ››› page 136 (up to a maximum of 0.5 litres).

Fixed service intervals*

If your vehicle does not have the “LongLife service interval” or it has been disabled (by request), you may use oils for **fixed service intervals**, which also appear in ››› page 136, Oil properties. In this case, your vehicle must be serviced after a fixed interval of 1 year/15,000 km (10,000 miles)(whatever comes first) ››› Booklet Maintenance Programme.

- In exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ››› page 136 and you cannot obtain the oil specified for your vehicle, you can add a small quantity of oil conforming to the specification ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 (petrol engines) or ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 (diesel engines) (up to 0.5 l).

Vehicles with diesel particulate filter*

The Maintenance Programme states whether your vehicle is fitted with a diesel particulate filter.

Only VW 507 00 engine oil, with reduced ash formation, may be used in diesel engines equipped with particulate filter. Using other types of oil will cause a higher soot concentration and reduce the life of the DPF. Therefore: »

- Avoid mixing this oil with other engine oils.
- Only in exceptional circumstances, if the engine oil level is too low ››› page 136 and you cannot obtain the oil specified for your vehicle, you can use a small quantity of oil (once) conforming to the VW 506 00, VW 506 01, VW 505 00, VW 505 01 or ACEA B3/ACEA B4 specification. (up to 0.5 l).

Oil properties

Engine type	Specification
Petrol without flexible service interval	VW 502 00/VW 504 00
Petrol with flexible service interval (LongLife)	VW 504 00
Diesel. Engines without Particulate filter (DPF)	VW 505 01/VW 506 01/VW 507 00
Diesel. Particulate Filter Engines (DPF). With or without flexible service interval (with and without LongLife)[a]	VW 507 00

[a] Only use recommended oils, otherwise you may damage the engine.

Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and recommend keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed.

Checking the engine oil level

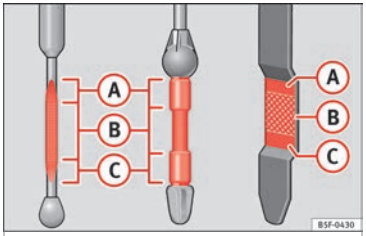

Fig. 111 Engine oil dipsticks.

The dipstick shows the engine oil level. ››› Fig. 111.

Checking oil level

– Park the vehicle on a level surface and ensure the engine is at operating temperature.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet.

– Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back to the sump and remove the dipstick.

– Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again as far as it will go.

– Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level in area (A)

– Do **not** top up oil.

Oil level in area (B)

– Oil **can** be topped up. After topping up the oil level could be in area (A).

Oil level in area (C)

– Oil **must** be topped up. After topping up, the oil level should be in area (B).

It is normal for the engine to consume a certain amount of oil. Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 litres per 1,000 km. Oil consumption can also be higher for the first 5,000 km (3000 miles).

You should therefore check the oil level at regular intervals, ideally every time you fill the tank or before setting off on a long trip.

When the engine is working hard, for instance during sustained motorway cruising in summer, when towing a trailer or caravan or

climbing on mountain passes, the oil level should preferably be kept within area (A), **but no higher**.

A warning lamp will appear on the instrument panel ››› page 34, Engine oil if the oil level is too low. In this case, check the oil level as soon as possible. Top up with the required amount of oil.

CAUTION

- **The oil level must never exceed area (A) ››› Fig. 111. Risk of damage to the exhaust system!**
- **If the engine oil cannot be topped up under the given conditions, do not drive on! Stop the engine and seek the professional assistance of an Official Service, as this could cause serious damage to the engine.**

Topping up engine oil

– Check the engine oil level ››› page 136, Checking the engine oil level.

– Unscrew the cap from the filler opening.

– Put in the specified grade of oil 0.5 litres at a time ››› page 135.

– Check the oil level ››› page 136.

– Replace the oil filler cap carefully and push the dipstick all the way in.

Changing engine oil

Engine oil must be changed with the frequency indicated in the Maintenance Programme or according to the service interval indicator ››› page 45.

CAUTION

Do not mix engine oil with additives. Risk of damage to the engine! Damage caused by these products is not covered by the warranty.

Note

Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

Coolant

General notes

The cooling system is factory-filled with an anti-freeze product.

Coolant consists of a mixture of water and 40% anti-freeze additive. This mixture gives the required anti-freeze protection at temperatures down to -25 °C (-13 °F) and protects the cooling and heating system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant considerably.

The coolant concentration must not be reduced by adding water, even in warmer seasons or in warm countries. **The concentration of the anti-freeze additive in the coolant must be at least 40 %.**

If greater anti-freeze protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of the anti-freeze additive can be increased, but only up to 60% (anti-freeze protection down to approximately -40 °C (-40 °F)). Exceeding this proportion reduces anti-freeze protection and the cooling effect.

Coolant fluid with protection down to -35 °C (-31 °F) is added at the factory in vehicles destined for countries with a cold climate. In these countries, the concentration of coolant should always be kept above 50%.

The type of anti-freeze to be used for topping up is indicated on the coolant tank cover ››› Fig. 112.

CAUTION

- **Anti-freeze that does not correspond to the correct specification may particularly affect corrosion protection considerably.**
- **Faults caused by corrosion may lead to coolant leaks. Risk of serious engine faults!**

Checking coolant level

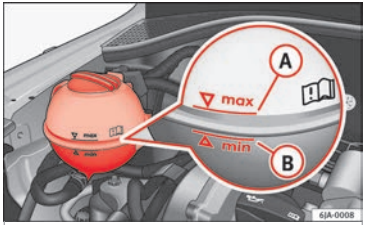

Fig. 112 Engine compartment: coolant fluid tank.

The coolant expansion tank is located in the engine compartment of the vehicle.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet ›› page 132.

– Read off the coolant level on coolant expansion tank ›› **Fig. 112**. When the engine is cold, the coolant should be between marks (B) (min.) and (A) (max.). When the engine is hot, it may be slightly above mark (A) (max.).

If the coolant fluid level in the reservoir is too low, this will be indicated by the red warning lamp illuminating on the general dash panel ›› page 35, **Coolant level and temperature**. However, we recommend checking the coolant level directly in the tank.

Coolant fluid loss

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a **leak**. It is not sufficient merely to top up the coolant. The cooling system should be inspected by an Official Service without delay.

CAUTION

In the event of a fault that causes the engine to overheat, contact an authorised SEAT dealer immediately, as this could damage the engine.

Topping up coolant

– Switch the ignition off.

– Wait for the engine to cool down.

– Cover the cap on the coolant expansion tank ›› **Fig. 112** with a cloth and **carefully** unscrew the cap.

– Refill the level of coolant.

– Screw the cap on again until it clicks into place.

Do not use a different type of additive if the prescribed anti-freeze additive is not available, in the event of an emergency. In this case, use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible at an Official Service.

Always top up with unused coolant.

Never fill the coolant tank above mark (A) (max.) ›› **Fig. 112** Excess coolant is forced out of the cooling system through the overpressure valve in the filler cap of the expansion tank when the engine heats up.

WARNING

- **The anti-freeze additive and, therefore, the entire coolant, are a health hazard. Avoid touching the coolant. Coolant fumes are also a health hazard. For this reason, always store the coolant additive in a safe place out of the reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**
- **If splashed into eyes, rinse immediately with clean water and seek immediate medical attention.**
- **Seek immediate medical attention if the coolant is accidentally ingested.**

CAUTION

If the coolant cannot be topped up under the given conditions, do not drive on. We recommend contacting an authorised SEAT dealer, as this can damage the engine.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

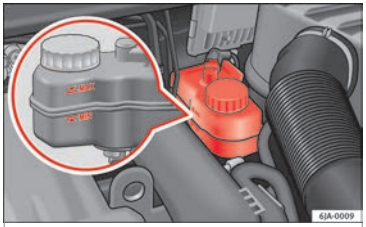

Fig. 113 Engine compartment: brake fluid reservoir.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment of the vehicle.

– Switch the ignition off.

– Open the bonnet ›› page 132.

– Check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ›› **Fig. 113**. It should be between the “MIN” and “MAX” marks.

The fluid level drops slightly after a period of time due to automatic compensation for brake pad wear. This is quite normal.

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the “MIN” mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, this will be indicated by the warning lamp illuminating on the instrument panel ›› page 33, Brake system.

⚠ WARNING

If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN mark, do not continue driving. Risk of accident! Go to a technical service.

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Therefore, it gradually absorbs moisture from the atmosphere. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. The water content also reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with one of the following standards or specifications:

- VW 50114
- FMVSS 116 DOT4

⚠ WARNING

Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the brake system for too long. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle.

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the vehicle paintwork.

Windscreen washer

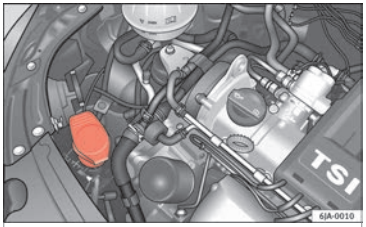

Fig. 114 Engine compartment: windscreen washer reservoir.

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and the headlight washer system. The container is located in the engine compartment. »

The **capacity** of the reservoir is approximately 3.5 litres; in vehicles with a headlight washer system, it is approximately 5.4 litres[1].

Plain water on its own is not enough to clean the glass and the headlights properly. We therefore recommend using clean water with a glass cleaning product to eliminate any stubborn dirt **(with an anti-freeze additive in winter)**.

Although your vehicle has heated windscreen washer jets, anti-freeze should always be added to the water in winter.

Ethanol can be used where glass cleaner with anti-freeze is unavailable. The concentration of ethanol must be no greater than 15 %. However, remember that anti-freeze in this proportion only protects down to -5 °C (+23 °F).

CAUTION

- **Never mix the windscreen washing water with anti-freeze used for the cooling system or other additives.**
- **If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer system, only mix a detergent that does not damage polycarbonates with the water.**

Note

When topping up the fluid, do not move the filter from the container opening, as this could contaminate the fluid hoses and lead to a windscreen washer malfunction.

Battery

Introduction

Warning symbols on the battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear safety glasses!
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Always wear gloves and hearing protection!
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away when working on the battery!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge!
	Keep children away from the battery!

Incorrect handling of the vehicle battery could lead to damage. We therefore recommend all work on the vehicle battery be performed by an authorised SEAT dealer.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system. Therefore, always observe the warnings and follow all general safety precautions.

WARNING

- **Battery acid is very corrosive, therefore, the battery must be handled with the utmost care. Wear protective gloves and protect your eyes and skin when handling batteries. The corrosive fumes in the air irritate and inflame the respiratory tract and cause conjunctivitis. It corrodes tooth enamel. Causes deep and difficult-to-heal wounds when it comes in contact with the skin. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin disease (inflammation, ulcers and fissures). When in contact with water, acids dilute and develop a great deal of heat.**
- **Do not tilt the battery, as acid could leak out of the vapour vents. Protect your eyes with glasses or a protective helmet! Risk of blindness! If acid should splash into the eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately for several minutes using clean water. Then seek medical care immediately.**

[1] Valid only for certain countries. 5.4 litres for both versions.

- Neutralize any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with soap solution as quickly as possible and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.
- Keep children away from the battery.
- Hydrogen is released and a highly explosive mixture of gases is generated when the battery is under charge. Sparks when disconnecting or releasing cable terminals with the ignition switched on could also cause an explosion.
- A short circuit is produced if the battery terminals are bridged, e.g. using metal objects, cables, etc. Possible consequences of a short circuit: melting of lead plates, battery explosion and fire, splashing acid.
- The following is forbidden while working on the battery: fire and open flames, smoking and activities that could produce sparks. Avoid causing sparks when handling cables or electrical apparatus. Risk of injury in the event of large sparks.
- Before working on the electrical system, you must switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the cable from the negative terminal (-) of the battery. To change a bulb, simply switch off the corresponding light.
- Never charge a frozen or thawed out battery. Risk of explosion and acid burns! Replace a frozen battery.
- Never use the jump leads on batteries in which the electrolyte level is too low. Risk of explosion and acid burns!

- Never use a damaged battery. Risk of explosion! Replace a damaged battery immediately.

CAUTION

- Never disconnect the battery when the ignition is switched on, as the electrical system (electronic components) of the vehicle could be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle electrical system, disconnect its negative terminal (-) first. Only then may the positive terminal (+) be disconnected.
- When connecting the battery, first connect the positive terminal (+) and then the negative terminal (-). The battery cables must never be connected to the wrong battery terminals. Risk of burning the electrical installation!
- Make sure the battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork. Risk of paintwork damage.
- Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight to protect it from ultraviolet radiation.
- If the vehicle is not used for 3 or 4 weeks, the battery could run flat. This is because some components use electricity even in standby mode (e.g. control units). Prevent the battery from running flat by disconnecting its negative terminal or leave it charging at a low current.
- If you frequently use the vehicle for short trips, the battery may not fully charge and could run flat.

For the sake of the environment

A flat battery is particularly harmful waste for the environment. It must therefore be disposed of according to current local law.

Note

Replace a battery once it is older than 5 years.

Open the battery cover.

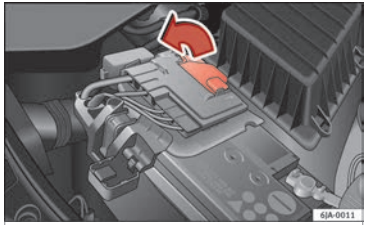

Fig. 115 Battery: Opening the cover.

The battery is located beneath a plastic cover in the engine compartment.

– Open the battery cover in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› **Fig. 115**.

– The positive terminal (+) of the battery is connected in reverse order.

Checking battery acid level

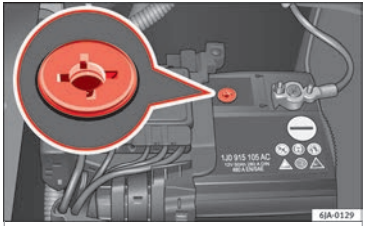

Fig. 116 Battery: Electrolyte level indicator.

We recommend you have the acid level regularly checked at an official technical service, particularly in the following cases.

- At high outside temperatures.
- On long daily trips.
- Whenever the vehicle is loaded

››› **page 142, Charging the battery**.

In vehicles equipped with a battery with colour indicator, the so-called magic eye ››› **Fig. 116** changes colour to indicate the acid level.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock the indicator before checking the acid level.

- Black – the acid level is correct.
- Colourless or light yellow – acid level too low, battery must be changed.

Note

- **The battery acid level is also regularly checked during servicing at authorised SEAT dealers.**
- **The electrolyte level on “AGM” batteries cannot be checked for technical reasons.**
- **Vehicles equipped with the “Start-Stop” system include a battery control unit to control the battery level for repeated engine starting.**

Winter service

At low temperatures the battery provides only a fraction of the starting power it has at normal temperatures.

A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures slightly below to 0 °C (32 °F).

We therefore recommend you have the battery checked and, if necessary, charged at an official SEAT technical service before the start of winter.

Charging the battery

A fully-charged battery is essential for reliable starting.

– Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.

– For “fast-charging” only: disconnect both battery connection cables (first the “negative” terminal and then the “positive”).

– Connect the charger cables to the battery terminals (red = “positive”, black = “negative”).

– Plug in the battery charger and switch on.

– After charging the battery: Switch off the battery charger and disconnect the cable.

– Remove the charger cables.

– If necessary, reconnect both battery cables to the battery (first the “positive” cable, then the “negative” cable).

When charging with a low current (e.g. with a **small battery charger**), the battery does not normally have to be disconnected. **The instructions of the battery charger manufacturer must be followed.**

Use a current equivalent to or lower than 10% of the battery capacity to fully charge the battery.

Before **“fast-charging”** the battery however, both battery cables must be disconnected.

“Fast-charging” a battery is **dangerous** and requires a battery charger and special knowledge. Fast charges should be performed by an official technical service.

The battery caps should not be opened while the battery is being charged.

CAUTION

In vehicles fitted with the "Start-Stop" system, the charger cable cannot be directly connected to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery but must be attached to the engine ground point **»» page 158.**

Disconnecting and connecting the battery

The following functions will either be inoperative or will not work properly after disconnecting and reconnecting the battery:

Function	Installation
Setting the clock	»» page 32
The multifunction display data is deleted	»» page 39

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by an authorised SEAT dealer to guarantee the correct working order of all electrical systems.

Changing the battery

A replacement battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current rating and size as the original. The appropriate types of battery can be acquired from authorised SEAT dealers.

We recommend having the battery changed by an authorised SEAT dealer, where the new battery will be correctly installed and the original disposed of in line with regulations.

Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment

When heavily-charging a battery, the programme selected by the electrical system control unit prevents the battery from automatically discharging. This may result in the following:

- Increase in idling speed so that the alternator can supply more current to the electrical system.
- The performance of certain electrical components could be limited or some may switch off temporarily, e.g. the heated seats, the heated rear window, the 12 V power socket.

Note

Despite any measures taken by the control unit, the battery could drain. e.g. with the engine is switched off, the key is turned in the ignition for a long period or the side lights or parking lights are switched on. The switching off of certain electrical components does not impair driving comfort and often the driver will not even notice.

Wheels and tyres

Wheels

Introduction

WARNING

- During the first 500 km, new tyres do not give maximum grip, therefore you should drive carefully. Risk of accident!
- Never drive with damaged tyres. Risk of accident!
- Only use wheels and tyres that been authorised by SEAT or your vehicle model. Failure to do so could impair road safety. Risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum speed permitted for your tyres. Risk of accident due to tyre damage and loss of vehicle control!
- Under-inflated tyres are submitted to greater rolling resistance. This means that they can overheat at high speeds. This can cause tread separation and even tyre blow-out.
- For driving safety, tyres should be replaced at least in pairs according to the axle and not individually. The tyres with the deepest tread should always be used on the front wheels.
- Never fit used tyres of an unknown age or prior use.
- Tyres must be immediately changed at the very latest when they have worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- Worn tyres reduce the necessary grip at high speeds on damp surfaces. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "skidding" on damp surfaces).
- Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Do not use summer or winter tyres that are more than 6 or 4 years old respectively.
- Wheel bolts should be clean and screw easily. However, they must never be treated with grease or oil.
- If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is moving. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too high, the bolts and threads could be damaged, leading to the permanent deforming of the rim support surfaces.
- Incorrectly handled wheel bolts could lead to a wheel coming loose while the vehicle is moving. Risk of accident!
- Observe the national legal requirements regarding the use of snow tyres and chains.

CAUTION

- Where a spare wheel that is not compatible with the wheels fitted is used, follow the instructions »» page 146.
- The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts on steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- Protect your tyres from coming into contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace any lost valve caps immediately.

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend having all work on tyres and wheels carried out by an authorised SEAT dealer.
- We recommend using wheels, tyres, hub caps and snow chains from the SEAT Original Accessories programme.

Life cycle of tyres

Fig. 117 Side view of tyres with tread wear indicators.

Tread wear indicator

The base of the side of the original tyres on your vehicle show 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators »» **Fig. 117**. The position of these

indicators is given on the tyre sidewalls by the letters “TWI”, triangular symbols or other symbols.

The useful life of the tyres depends primarily on the following factors:

Tyre pressure values

Under-inflation or over-inflation will considerably reduce the useful life of the tyres and impair the vehicle's handling. Therefore, check the tyre pressure, including the spare wheel, at least once a month and before any long journey.

Inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are listed on a sticker inside the fuel tank flap. The pressures for **winter tyres** are 0.2 bar (2.9 psi/20 kPa) above the summer values.

Always check the pressure when the tyre is cold. Do not reduce over-pressure in warm tyres. The tyre pressures must be altered to suit notable changes in the load being carried.

Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. Various factors encountered when driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in vibration of the steering wheel.

The wheel must be rebalanced if a new tyre is fitted or if a tyre is repaired.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect front or rear wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, frequently on one side, and also impairs vehicle safety. If tyre wear is very irregular, contact an Official Service.

Tyre damage

To avoid damage to tyres and wheels, only drive over kerbs or similar obstacles slowly and at a right angle if possible.

Check tyres and wheels regularly for damage (punctures, cracks, blisters, deformities, etc.). Remove any foreign objects embedded in outside of the treads.

Unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. **Reduce speed immediately and stop if you suspect that damage may have occurred!** Check the tyres for damage (blisters, cracks, etc.). If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest Official Service and have the vehicle inspected.

Interchanging tyres

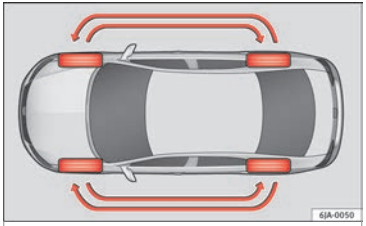

Fig. 118 Interchanging tyres.

Changing wheels around

If the wear is visibly greater on the front tyres, they should be exchanged for the rear tyres as shown in the diagram ››› **Fig. 118**. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

To ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres and maintain their optimum useful life, they should be changed around every 10 000 km.

Storing tyres

When you remove the tyres, mark them in order to maintain the same direction of rotation when they are installed again.

When removed, the wheels and/or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark location. Store tyres in a vertical position, if they are not fitted on wheel rims.

Replacing tyres and wheels

All four wheels must be fitted only with tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern.

The correct tyre/wheel combinations specified for your vehicle are listed in its documentation.

Note for Italy: A SEAT Service Centre should be consulted whether different sized wheels or tyres to those originally fitted by SEAT may be fitted, as well as the combinations allowed between the front axle (axle 1) and back axle (axle 2).

Understanding the tyre designations makes it easier to choose the correct tyres. The tyre designation is marked on the sidewall. For example.

195/55 R 15 85 H

This contains the following information:

195	Tyre width in mm
55	Height/width ratio in %
R	identifying tyre construction letter – **R**adial
15	Rim diameter in inches
85	Load rating code
H	Speed rating code letter

The tyres are subject to the following **maximum speed limits**:

Speed rating code letter	Maximum speed limit
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)

The **manufacturing date** is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the *inner* side of the wheel).

DOT ... 27 12...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 27th week of 2012.

Follow the instructions »» **page 146** if you only have a temporary spare wheel.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

The direction of rotation is indicated by the **arrows on the tyre sidewall**. The direction of rotation indicated must be respected. This guarantees optimum grip and helps avoid excessive noise, wear and aquaplaning.

In the event of a flat tyre, a spare wheel with an undetermined tread pattern or an opposite tread pattern must be used and you must drive carefully, as in these cases the tyres no longer offer maximum performance.

Spare wheel

Spare wheel location*

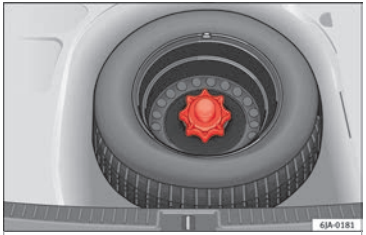

Fig. 119 Luggage compartment: spare wheel.

The spare wheel is housed in a well under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is secured by a special bolt »» **Fig. 119**.

Take out the tool box before removing the spare wheel.

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel must be checked (preferably whenever the tyre pressure is checked – see sticker on fuel tank flap ››› page 144) to ensure the spare wheel remains ready for use.

If the spare wheel is not the same size or design as the tyres that are mounted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or tyres with direction tread), only use the spare tyre for a short period of time in the event of breakdown and drive with the corresponding care ››› ⚠.

It must be replaced as soon as possible for a wheel with a normal size and finish.

Temporary spare wheel

If the vehicle is equipped with a temporary spare wheel, there will be a warning sign on the rim of the wheel.

Follow the instructions below when driving with this wheel fitted.

- After fitting the wheel, the warning sign must not be covered.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with the spare wheel and take great care while driving. Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- The tyre pressure is the same as that of the standard tyres.
- Only use this spare wheel to reach the nearest Official Service, as it is not designed for permanent use.

⚠ WARNING

- **Under no circumstances must damaged spare wheels be used.**
- **If the spare wheel is different in size or design to the tyres currently fitted, never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**

CAUTION

Follow the instructions given on the temporary spare wheel label.

Note

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel must always correspond to the highest pressure prescribed for the model of vehicle in question.

Tyre control systems

Tyre pressure*

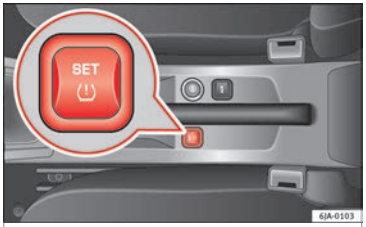

Fig. 120 Tyre pressure adjustment switch.

The tyre pressure monitoring system uses ABS sensors to compare the revolutions and the circumference of each wheel. Should the circumference of any wheel change, the warning lamp (!) on the general dash panel ››› page 38 will light up and an audible warning will be heard.

Tyre circumference may change if:

- Tyre pressure is too low
- Tyre structure is damaged
- Vehicle load not evenly distributed
- wheels on one axle are subjected to greater load, (e.g. driving with trailer, uphill, downhill);
- Snow chains are fitted

»

- The temporary spare wheel is fitted
- One wheel on the axle has been changed

Basic system settings

Should the tyre pressure change or if one or more wheels are changed or the position of the wheel on the vehicle is changed, e.g. changing round the front and rear wheels, or where a warning lamp lights up when driving, the system must be adjusted as follows:

- Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressures ››› page 144.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Hold the SET ⓘ ››› Fig. 120 button down for at least 2 seconds. The warning lamp will light up when the button is pressed ⓘ. The system memory is also deleted and a new calibration process will begin, which is indicated by an audible warning and the warning lamp ⓘ switching off.
- If the warning lamp ⓘ remains lit and does not switch off, not even once the basic setting process is complete, this indicates a fault in the system. Contact an Official Service.

The warning lamp ⓘ lights up

If the pressure on at least one tyre is significantly lower than the pressure set by the driver, the warning lamp ⓘ ››› ⚠ will light up.

The warning lamp ⓘ flashes

If the warning lamp flashes, there is a fault in the system. Contact a specialised service to have it fixed.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the warning lamp ⓘ lights up, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. Stop and check the tyres and their pressure as soon as possible.**
- **Under certain conditions (e.g. sporty driving style, driving on loose surfaces or in winter) the warning lamp ⓘ may take a while to light up or may remain switched off.**
- **Despite the tyre pressure monitoring system, the driver remains responsible for maintaining the correct tyre pressure. You must therefore check the tyre pressure often.**

Note

- **The tyre pressure monitoring system is not a replacement for regularly checking the tyre pressure, as it is unable to recognise an even drop in pressure.**
- **The tyre pressure monitoring system is unable to warn of a sudden drop in tyre pressure, e.g. a puncture. In this case, try to stop the vehicle carefully with no severe braking or steering manoeuvres.**
- **To ensure the tyre pressure monitoring system works correctly, the basic setting must be performed every 10 000 km (6000 miles) or once a year.**

Winter service

Winter tyres

Winter tyres will significantly improve handling of the vehicle in winter road conditions. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip at temperatures below +7 °C (45 °F), on ice and snow. This applies particularly to vehicles equipped with **wide section tyres** or **high speed tyres** (code letters H or V on the sidewall).

In order to preserve the performance of the vehicle as much as possible, winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels, the minimum depth of the tread must be 4 mm and the maximum age must be 4 years.

You can use winter tyres of a lower speed rating if the maximum speed limit of these tyres will not be exceeded, even if the maximum speed limit for the vehicle is higher.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again in time, as they give better handling on roads free of snow and ice and at temperatures over +7 °C (45 °F). Summer tyres have a shorter braking distance, produce less rolling noise and do not wear as quickly. They also reduce fuel consumption.

Snow chains

Snow chains must only be used on the front wheels.

In winter road conditions, snow chains not only help to improve grip but also improve the braking capacity.

For technical reasons snow chains may only be used on tyres with the following wheel rim/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
5J x 14[a)]	35 mm	175/70
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	185/60
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	195/55

[a)] Only use snow chains with fine-pitch links and lock no greater than **9 mm**.

[b)] Only use snow chains with fine-pitch links and lock no greater than **13 mm**.

Remove the **wheel trims** before fitting snow chains.

CAUTION

Chains must be removed when roads are free of snow. Otherwise they will impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.

Emergencies

Emergency equipment

First-aid kit and warning triangle*

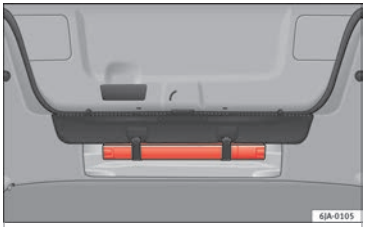

Fig. 121 Location of the warning triangle.

The warning triangle, measuring max. 436 x 45 x 32 mm, can be secured to the lining on the rear of the luggage compartment with rubber straps ››› **Fig. 121**.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and fire extinguisher must be properly secured so that they are not catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. Risk of injury.

Note

- **Observe the expiry date of the contents of the first aid kit.**
- **We recommend you use the first-aid kit and the warning triangle from the SEAT Original Accessories programme available in authorised SEAT dealers.**

Fire extinguisher*

Read the instructions given on the fire extinguisher carefully.

The fire extinguisher must be checked once a year by an authorised person (take the applicable legal regulations into account).

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must be properly secured so that it is not catapulted through the vehicle, causing injuries, during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

Note

- **The fire extinguisher must comply with local legal requirements.**
- **Observe the expiry date of the fire extinguisher. The fire extinguisher may not work properly if used after the expiry date.**

Vehicle tool kit*

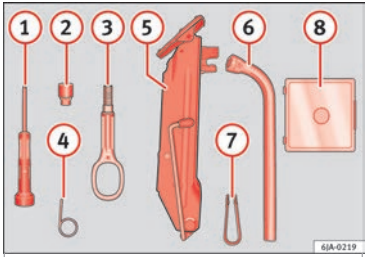

Fig. 122 Vehicle tool kit.

The vehicle tool kit and the jack are stored in a box on the spare wheel or in the spare wheel well. There is also enough space for the towing bracket ball coupling. The box is strapped to the spare wheel with tape.

The vehicle tool kit includes the following parts (depending on equipment):

1. Screwdriver
2. Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3. Towline anchorage
4. Wire hook for removing hub caps
5. Jack
6. Box spanner for wheel bolts
7. Clip for wheel bolt cover
8. Spare set of bulbs

Before stowing the jack again, screw down the arm as far as it will go.

⚠ WARNING

- **The factory-supplied jack is only designed for changing wheels on this model of vehicle. On no account attempt to use it for lighting heavier vehicles or other loads. Risk of injury!**
- **Make sure that the vehicle tools are stored properly in the luggage compartment.**

Note

- **Make sure the box always remains strapped to the spare wheel with tape.**
- **The jack does not generally require any maintenance. If required, it should be greased using universal type grease.**

Changing a wheel

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

- **If you have a puncture in moving traffic, switch on the hazard warning lights and place the warning triangle at the obligatory distance. Observe applicable local legal regulations. This is for your own safety and that of other drivers.**
- **If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle as far away as possible from moving traffic. Stop on flat, solid ground.**
- **If you have to change the tyre on a gradient, block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed by placing a stone or similar object under it to prevent the vehicle from rolling away unexpectedly.**
- **If the vehicle has been fitted with tyres or alloys that are different to those fitted in manufacture, the instructions** **»» page 146, Replacing tyres and wheels** **must be followed.**
- **Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.**
- **Never place parts of your body, e.g. arms and legs, underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.**
- **Secure the base of the jack with suitable supports so that it cannot slip. The jack could slide if the ground below it is soft and slippery and the vehicle could slip off it. Therefore, place the jack on a firm surface or use a large, stable base. On a slippery surface, e.g. tile, use a non-slip base such as a rubber mat.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is jacked. Risk of injury.**
- **The jack should only be used in the correct jacking points.**

CAUTION

- **The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts on steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm.**

- **If the anti-theft wheel bolt is overly tightened, this could damage the bolt and the adapter.**

Note

- **The set of anti-theft wheel bolts or the adapter are available from authorised SEAT dealers.**
- **Please observe the relevant local legal regulations when changing the wheel.**

Preparation work

Some preparation is required before changing a wheel:

– If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle as far away as possible from moving traffic. The surface must be **horizontal**.

– **All vehicle occupants should leave the vehicle**. Vehicle occupants should wait in a safe place, e.g. behind the roadside crash barrier) while the wheel is being changed.

– Switch off the ignition and engage **neutral** or move the **selector lever** on the automatic gearbox **to position P**.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– If towing a trailer, unhitch it.

– Take the **vehicle tool kit** »» page 150 and the **spare wheel** »» page 150 out of the luggage compartment.

Wheel trim

Removing

– Place the hook from the vehicle tool kit on the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.

– Insert the box spanner through the hook, supporting it on the tyre and remove the wheel trim.

Fitting

– First press the wheel trim onto the wheel at the cut out designed for the valve. Then press the wheel trim on both sides in the direction of the valve so that it fits correctly in place around all the perimeter.

CAUTION

- **Press down by hand, do not hit the wheel trim! Knocking it sharply, particularly at points where the wheel trim has not yet been inserted, could result in damage to the wheel trim guiding and centring elements.**
- **Before fitting the trim on a steel wheel attached with an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure the bolt is in the hole in the valve area** **»» page 154, Anti-theft wheel bolts*.**

- **Where trim is fitted at a later date, ensure enough air inflow is guaranteed in order to cool the brake system.**

Wheel bolt caps

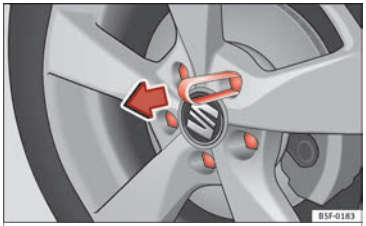

Fig. 123 Pull off the wheel bolt cap.

Removing

– Insert the plastic clip into the cap until the inner retaining notches on the clips touch the collar of the cap and then remove it »» Fig. 123.

Fitting

– Insert the caps as far as they will go over the wheel bolts.

The wheel bolt caps are stored in a box on the spare wheel or in the spare wheel well.

Wheel bolts

The **wheel bolts** are matched to the rims. When installing different wheels, e.g. to fit light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres, it is important to use the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads. This is essential for a secure fit of the wheels and for proper operation of the brake system.

Changing a wheel

If possible, change the wheel on a level surface.

– Pull off the hub cap ››› page 151 or the wheel bolt covers ››› page 151.

– First loosen the anti-theft wheel bolts and then the other wheel bolts ››› page 152.

– Raise the vehicle until the wheel to be changed is no longer touching the ground ››› page 153.

– Remove the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).

– Take off the wheel.

– Lift the spare wheel into position and tighten the wheel bolts lightly.

– Lower the vehicle.

– Tighten the wheel bolts firmly in diagonal sequence with the box spanner and then the anti-theft wheel bolt ››› page 152.

– Replace the hub cap and/or the bolt covers.

Note

- **All bolts must be clean and turn easily.**
- **Never grease or oil the wheel bolts!**
- **Note the direction of rotation when putting on a tyre with a directional tread pattern** **››› page 144****.**

After changing a wheel

Tasks that must be carried out after changing a wheel:

– Place the wheel with the defective tyre in the spare wheel well and secure it using a special bolt ››› page 146.

– Put the vehicle tools back in their storage location.

– **Check the tyre pressure** of the newly fitted spare wheel as soon as possible.

– Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** as soon as possible with a torque wrench.

– Have the flat tyre replaced or ask an Official Service about the possibility of repair.

Note

- **If you notice that the wheel bolts are rusty and difficult to turn when changing a wheel, they must be replaced before having the tightening torque checked.**
- **Drive carefully and at moderate speeds until the tightening torque of the wheel bolts has been checked.**

Loosening and tightening wheel bolts

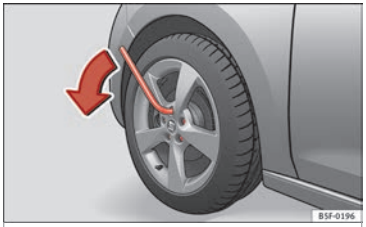

Fig. 124 Changing a wheel: loosen the wheel bolts.

Loosening wheel bolts

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1].

– Grip the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt about **one** turn anti-clockwise ››› Fig. 124.

Tightening wheel bolts

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1].

– Grip the box spanner as close to the end as possible and tighten the bolt firmly by turning clockwise.

⚠ WARNING

The wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (about one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack. Risk of accident!

Note

If the wheel bolt is very tight, it may be possible to loosen it by pushing down the end of the box spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip.

Lifting the vehicle

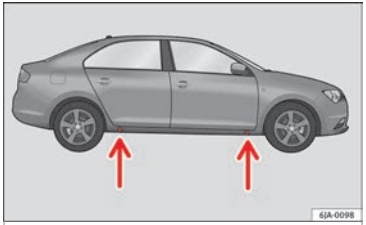

Fig. 125 Changing a wheel: jack position points.

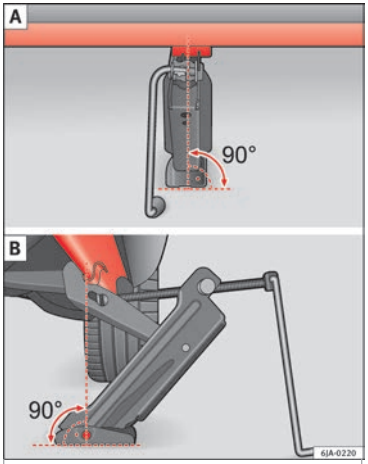

Fig. 126 Fitting the jack.

To place the jack, locate the jacking point under the door sill closest to the wheel to be changed ››› Fig. 125. The jacking point is directly underneath the stamp on the door sill.

– Turn the crank handle on the jack to wind it up under the jacking point until its claw is directly below the jacking point of the door sill. »

[1] The corresponding adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ››› page 154.

– Adjust the jack so that its claw surrounds the jacking point on the door sill ››› Fig. 126 - B underneath the stamp on the door sill.

– Make sure that the base of the jack is entirely supported on a flat surface and that it is vertical ››› Fig. 126 to the point where the claw surrounds the jacking point on the door sill.

– Continue to wind up the jack using the crank handle until the defective wheel is clear off the ground.

Anti-theft wheel bolts*

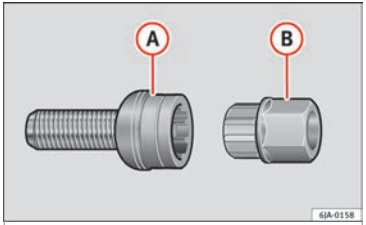

Fig. 127 Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter.

On vehicles fitted with anti-theft wheel bolts (one bolt per wheel) these bolts can only be loosened or tightened using a factory-supplied adapter.

– Pull off the hub cap or bolt cover.

– Insert the adapter (B) ››› Fig. 127 with its toothed side as far as it will go on the interior toothing of the anti-theft wheel bolt (A) so that only the outer hexagonal is protruding.

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over adapter (B).

– Loosen or firmly tighten the wheel bolt ››› page 152.

– After removing the adapter, replace the hub cap or the anti-theft wheel bolt cover.

– Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** as soon as possible with a torque wrench.

Note down the code number stamped on the front of the adapter or on the front of the anti-theft wheel bolt. You will need this number to obtain a spare adapter from the SEAT original accessories programme.

We recommend you always carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle. It should be stored in the vehicle tool kit.

Tyre repairs

TMS (Tyre Mobility System)*

The Tyre Mobility System is stored in a box under the carpet in the boot.

Using the Tyre Mobility System you can reliably seal tyres damaged by foreign bodies, provided that cuts or punctures are no larger than approx. 4 mm in diameter. Do not remove the foreign bodies, e.g. bolts or nails, from the tyre!

The tyre must be repaired immediately.

The repair made using the Tyre Mobility System **under no circumstances replaces** permanent tyre repair and should only be used to drive to the nearest official service.

The Tyre Mobility System kit shall not be used:

- If the wheel rim has been damaged,
- when the outside temperature is below -20 °C (-4 °F),
- on slashes or punctures larger than 4 mm,
- if the sidewall of the wheel has been damaged,
- If you have been driving with very low tyre pressure or a completely flat tyre
- If the best-before date on the air can has expired

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 150.

- **A tyre filled with sealant does not have the same performance properties as a conventional tyre.**

- **Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**
- **Check the tyre pressure after 10 minutes of driving!**
- **The sealant is harmful to health and must be immediately rinsed from affected skin.**

For the sake of the environment

Used or out-of-date sealant must be disposed of in line with environmental protection regulations.

Note

- **Observe the usage instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **A new can of sealant can be acquired from the selection of SEAT Original Accessories.**
- **Change the tyre repaired using the Tyre Mobility System as soon as possible or ask an official service about the possibility of repairing it for you.**

Components of the Tyre Mobility System*

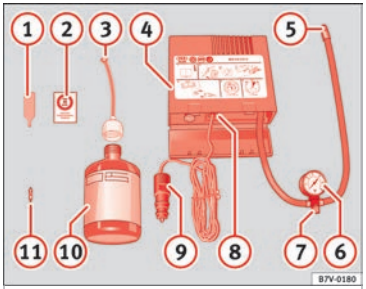

Fig. 128 Contents of the Tyre Mobility System.

The Tyre Mobility System contains the following components:

1. An adapter to fit and remove the valve
2. Sticker indicating the speed: “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph”
3. Flexible filling hose with cap
4. Compressor
5. Flexible tyre inflating hose
6. Tyre pressure gauge
7. Air release screw
8. ON/OFF button
9. 12 V cable connector ››› page 79
10. Can of sealant
11. Spare valve

The valve extractor (1) ››› Fig. 128 has a slot in its lower end that fits onto the valve insert. This is used to remove the valve insert from the tyre and to replace it. This is also valid for the spare valve insert (11).

Work prior to using the Tyre Mobility System

The following jobs must be performed before using the Tyre Mobility System:

– If you have a flat tyre, stop the vehicle well away from moving traffic. Stop on flat, solid ground.

– All vehicle occupants should **leave the vehicle**. Vehicle occupants should wait in a safe place (e.g. behind the roadside crash barrier) while the wheel is being changed.

– Switch off the ignition and engage **neutral** or move the **selector lever** on the automatic gearbox **to position P**.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– Check whether the tyre can be repaired using the Tyre Mobility System ››› page 154.

– If towing a trailer, unhitch it.

– Remove the **Tyre Mobility System** from the boot. »

– Fix the sticker (2) ››› Fig. 128 ››› page 155 onto the dash panel where the driver will see it.

– Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. bolts or nails, from the tyre.

– Unscrew the tyre valve cap.

– Using the valve extractor (1), unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.)

Filling and inflating the tyre

Filling the tyre

– Shake the tyre sealant can (10) ››› Fig. 128 ››› page 155 thoroughly several times.

– Attach the flexible filling hose (3) onto the can (10). The foil sealing the can will be automatically pierced.

– Remove the cap from the flexible filling hose (3) and insert the open end as far as it will go into the tyre valve.

– Hold the can (10) upside down and fill the complete contents of the can into the tyre.

– Remove the empty can from the tyre.

– Screw the valve insert back into the tyre valve using the valve extractor (1).

Inflating the tyre

– Screw the tyre filling hose (5) ››› Fig. 128 ››› page 155 firmly onto the tyre valve.

– Make sure that the bleed screw (7) is closed.

– Start the vehicle engine and leave it running.

– Plug connector (9) into the 12-volt power socket.

– Turn on the air compressor with switch (8).

– Leave the air compressor running until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 -2.5 bar (29-36 psi/200-250 kPa). The max. operating time for the compressor is 8 minutes ››› ! !

– Switch the compressor off.

– When an air pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar (29-36 psi/200-250 kPa) cannot be reached, unscrew the flexible tube (5) from the tyre valve.

– Drive the vehicle approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards, so that the sealant can “spread evenly” in the tyre.

– Screw the flexible hose from the air compressor (5) back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.

– If the pressure is still lower than specified, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be repaired using the tyre sealant kit ››› ⚠.

– Switch the compressor off.

– Unscrew the flexible hose (5) from the tyre valve.

When a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar (29-36 psi/200-250 kPa) is reached, you can continue driving at a max. speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre pressure after 10 minutes of driving ››› page 157.

⚠ WARNING

- **The flexible tyre filling hose and the air compressor may heat up during the filling process. Risk of injury!**
- **Do not place the hot flexible tyre filling hose or hot air compressor on top of flammable materials. Risk of fire!**
- **If the tyre cannot be inflated to a minimum pressure of 2.0 bar (29 psi/200 kPa), then the tyre is too badly damaged. The sealing product is unable to seal the tyre. Do not continue driving and obtain professional assistance.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Do not use the air compressor for longer than 8 minutes at a time. Risk of overheating! Before using the air compressor again, leave it to cool down for several minutes.

Check after 10 minutes of driving

Check the tyre pressure after 10 minutes of driving!

If the tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar (18.8 psi/130 kPa):

– **Do not drive on!** The tyre cannot be sufficiently filled using the tyre repair kit.

– See professional assistance.

If the tyre pressure is greater than 1.3 bar (18.8 psi/130 kPa):

– Correct the tyre pressure again to the correct value (see inside of the fuel tank flap).

– Carefully drive to the nearest specialised workshop at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both batteries need to have nominal voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the back-up battery should not be notably less than the drained battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current and must be fitted with insulated battery clamps. Refer to the instructions given by the manufacturer.

Positive cable – usually red

Negative cable – usually black

WARNING

- **A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures slightly below to 0 °C (32 °F). Do not attempt to start the vehicle with a frozen battery. Risk of explosion!**
- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment** **›› page 132.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. Additionally, the jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle. Risk of short circuit!**
- **Do not connect the negative lead to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. In the event of sparks when starting the engine, the explosive gas given off by the battery could catch fire.**
- **Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the battery. Risk of acid burns!**
- **The screw plugs on the battery cells must be screwed in firmly.**
- **Keep sources of fire (flames, lit cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery. - Risk of explosion!**
- **Never use the jump leads on batteries in which the electrolyte level is too low. Risk of explosion and acid burns.**

Note

- **The vehicles must not touch each other, as electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.**
- **The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle electrical system.**
- **The jump leads should be checked in a specialist vehicle battery shop.**

How to jump start: description

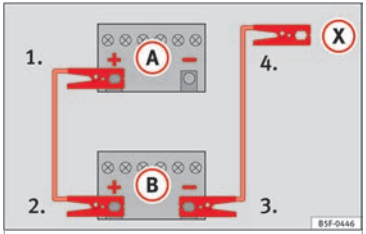

Fig. 129 Diagram of connections for vehicles without Start Stop system

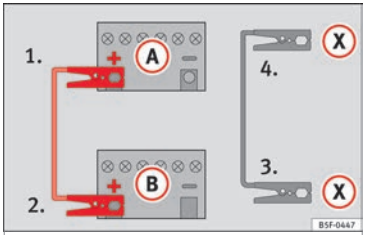

Fig. 130 Diagram of connections for vehicles with Start Stop system

Jump lead terminal connections

1. Switch off the ignition of both vehicles ››› ⚠.
2. Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the flat battery (A) ››› **Fig. 129**.
3. Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing assistance (B).
4. **For vehicles without Start-Stop system:** connect one end of the *black* jump lead to the negative terminal (–) of the vehicle providing the current (B) ››› **Fig. 129**.

– **For vehicles with Start-Stop system:** connect one end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a suitable ground terminal, to a solid piece of metal in the engine block, or to the engine block itself ››› **Fig. 130**.

5. Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a solid metal component bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery (A).
6. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting

7. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
8. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery and wait 2 or 3 minutes until the engine is “running”.

Removing the jump leads

9. Before you remove the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights (if they are switched on).
10. Turn on the heater blower and heated rear window in the vehicle with the flat battery. This helps minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
11. When the engine is running, disconnect the leads in reverse order to the details given above.

Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine fails to start, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about 1 minute.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment** **››› page 132.**
- **The battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the flat battery (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint**

on battery). Failure to comply could result in an explosion.

- **Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even after the battery has thawed, battery acid could leak and cause chemical burns. If a battery freezes, it should be replaced.**
- **Keep sparks, flames and lighted cigarettes away from batteries, danger of explosion. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the flat battery. The gas emitted from the battery could be ignited by sparks. Danger of explosion.**
- **Do not attach the negative cable from the other vehicle to parts of the fuel system or to the brake line.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not lean on the batteries. This could result in chemical burns.**

Note

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

Vehicles with manual gearbox can be towed using a towbar or towrope. They can also be towed with either the front or rear wheels lifted off the road.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox can be towed using a towbar or towrope. They can also be towed with the front wheels lifted off the road. If the vehicle is towed with the rear wheels lifted off the road the automatic gearbox will be damaged!

It is safer to tow a vehicle with a **towbar**. A **towrope** should only be used if you do not have a towbar.

Follow the instructions below when towing a vehicle:

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

– Engage the clutch very gently when starting to move or on vehicles with automatic gearbox press the accelerator carefully.

– On vehicles with a manual gearbox, the towrope must be taut before driving off.

Maximum towing speed is **50 km/h (31 mph)**.

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle

– The ignition should be switched on so that the steering wheel lock is not engaged and the turn signals, horn and windscreen wipers and washers can be used.

– Put the gear lever in neutral or move the selector lever to position **N** (automatic gearbox).

The brake servo and power steering only work when the engine is running. Considerably more effort is required on the brake pedal and steering wheel when the engine is switched off.

Ensure the towrope remains taut at all times when towing.

CAUTION

- **Do not tow-start the engine. Risk of engine damage! In vehicles with a catalytic converter, fuel that has not been burned could reach the catalytic converter and catch fire in it. This could damage and destroy the catalytic converter. You may use the battery from another vehicle to help you start your engine** **» page 158.**

»

- **If, due to a fault, there is no oil in the gearbox, the car may only be towed with the driven wheels lifted clear of the road and transported on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.**
- **If normal towing is not possible or if the vehicle is to be towed for further than 50 km, the vehicle must be transported on a special vehicle transporter or trailer.**
- **The towrope should be slightly elastic to reduce the load on both vehicles during towing. It is advisable to use a towrope made of synthetic fibre or similar material only.**
- **Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and always take care to avoid jerking the towrope. When towing on a loose surface there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.**
- **Attach the towrope or towbar only to the towline anchorages or to the removable towing bracket** **»» page 114, or »» page 161.**

Note

- **We recommend you use the towrope or towbar available in the SEAT Original Accessories programme from authorised SEAT dealers.**
- **Towing a vehicle requires a certain degree of practical skill. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow away another vehicle or to have their vehicle towed.**
- **Note the legal regulations concerning towing, particularly those regarding the signalling of the towed and towing vehicle.**
- **The towrope must not be twisted, as under certain circumstances this could unscrew the front towline anchorage.**

Towline anchorage

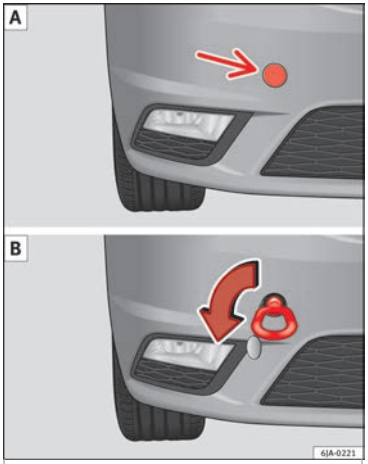

Fig. 131 Front bumper: towline anchorage cover/fitting.

Fitting and detaching the cover

– Press on the left of the cover as indicated by the arrow **»» Fig. 131** A.

– Pull on the cover to remove it from the front bumper.

– To refit the cover after unscrewing the towline anchorage, fit the cover and press down on its right-hand side. The cover must be securely engaged.

Fitting and detaching the towline anchorage

– Screw in the towline anchorage anti-clockwise by hand as far as it will go **»» Fig. 131** B.

To tighten the towline anchorage, we recommend using the box spanner, the towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be inserted through the anchorage.

– Unscrew the towline anchorage by turning it clockwise.

CAUTION

The towline anchorage must be screwed in as far as it will go. Otherwise there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing or tow-starting!

Rear Towline anchorage

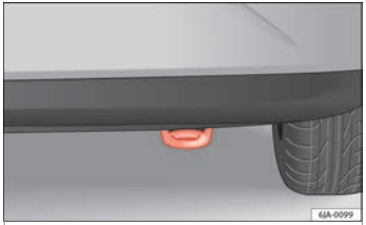

Fig. 132 Rear towline anchorage.

The rear towline anchorage is under the rear bumper, on the right.

Emergency locking and unlocking

Manual locking

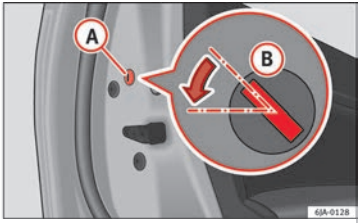

Fig. 133 Rear door: manual locking

On the front of a door with no lock cylinder there is an emergency locking device that is only visible when the door is open.

Locking

– Remove the cap (A) ››› Fig. 133.

– Insert the key in the slot (B) and turn it in the direction of the arrow until horizontal (on the other direction on the right-hand door).

– Replace the cap.

Once the door has been locked, it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle.

Manual release of the rear lid

Fig. 134 Manual release of the rear lid

In the event of a fault in the central locking system, the rear lid can be released manually.

Release

– Fold down the backrest of the rear seat ››› page 75.

– Insert the car key in the opening in the mat.

– Move it towards the arrow to release the rear lid.

– Open the rear lid.

Manual release of the selector lever

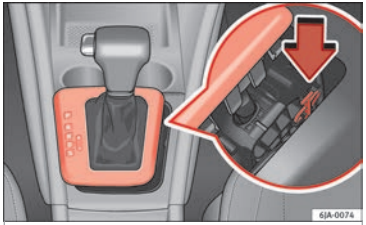

Fig. 135 Manual release of the selector lever.

If there is a fault in the power system to the electronic selector lever lock system (flat battery, blown fuse) or the system itself is faulty, the selector lever cannot be moved from position **P** in the normal manner, which prevents the vehicle from being moved. The selector lever must be unlocked using the manual release.

– Apply the handbrake.

– Pull gently on both sides at the front of the selector lever cover.

– Also loosen the cover at the rear.

– Press the yellow plastic part with your finger in the direction indicated by the arrow ››› **Fig. 135**.

– Press the interlock button on the selector lever knob at the same time and move the selector lever to position **N** (if the selector lever is moved back to position **P**, it will lock again).

Changing the wiper blades

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

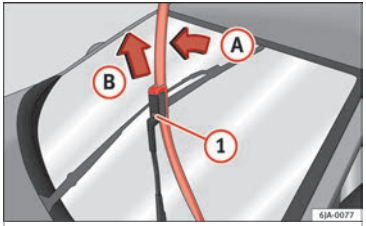

Fig. 136 Windscreen wiper blades.

Set the windscreen wiper arms to the service position before changing the blades.

Service position for changing wiper blades

– Close the bonnet.

– Switch the ignition on and off.

– Press the lever to position (4) ››› **Fig. 56** ››› **page 69**, the windscreen wiper arms are set to the service position.

Taking off the wiper blade

– Lift the windscreen wiper arm away from the glass moving the blade slightly in the direction of the arm – arrow (A) ››› **Fig. 136**.

– Hold the top of the windscreen wiper arm with one hand.

– Unlock the catch (1) with the other hand and remove the blade in the direction of arrow (B).

Fitting the wiper blade

– Slide the blade fully until it clicks into position.

– Check that the wiper is correctly secured.

– Fold the windscreen wiper arm back down onto the glass.

– Switch the ignition on and press the lever to position (4) ››› **Fig. 56** ››› **page 69**, the windscreen wiper arms are set to the basic position.

Changing the rear window wiper blade*

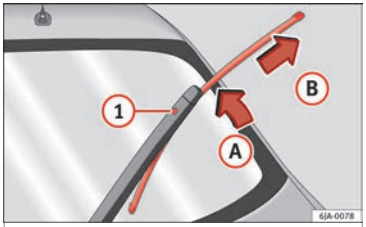

Fig. 137 Rear window wiper blade.

Taking off the wiper blade

– Lift the rear window wiper arm away from the glass moving the blade slightly in the direction of the arm – arrow (A) ››› Fig. 137.

– Hold the top of the rear window wiper arm with one hand.

– Unlock the catch (1) with the other hand and remove the blade in the direction of arrow (B).

Fitting the wiper blade

– Slide the blade fully until it clicks into position.

– Check that the wiper is correctly secured.

– Fold the rear window wiper arm back down onto the glass.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

Due to the constant updating of vehicles, fuse assignments based on equipment and the use of the same fuse for various electrical components, it is not possible to provide an up-to-date summary of the fuse positions for the electrical components at the time this manual was printed. For detailed information about the fuse positions, please consult a technical service.

In general, a fuse can be assigned to various electrical components. Likewise, an electrical component can be protected by several fuses.

Only replace fuses when the cause of the problem has been solved. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

Additional information and warnings:

- Working in the engine compartment ››› page 132.

⚠ WARNING

The high voltages in the electrical system can give serious electrical shocks, causing burns and even death!

- **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
- **Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.**

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses or bridging a current circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injury.

- **Never use a fuse with a higher value. Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.**
- **Never repair a fuse.**
- **Never replace a fuse by a metal strip, staple or similar.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **To prevent damage to the vehicle's electric system, before replacing a fuse always turn off the ignition, the lights and all electrical elements and remove the key from the ignition.**
- **If you replace a fuse with higher-rating fuse, you could cause damage to another part of the electrical system.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to prevent the entry of dust or humidity as they can damage the electrical system.**

»

Note

- **One component may have more than one fuse.**
- **Several components may run on a single fuse.**

Fuses on the dash panel

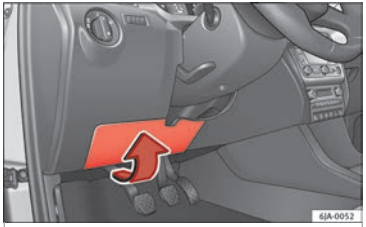

Fig. 138 Bottom of the dash panel: fuse cover.

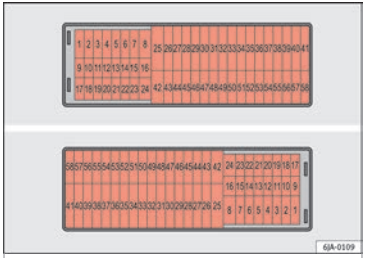

Fig. 139 Diagram of the fuse box to the left/right of the steering wheel

Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.

Identifying fuses situated below the driver-side dash panel by colours

Colour	Amp rating
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

Opening and closing the fuse box

- Carefully tilt the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it ››› **Fig. 138**.
- After changing the fuse, replace the cover on the dash panel in the direction opposite that is indicated by the arrow so that the cover tabs fit into the slots on the dash panel. Subsequently, press down on the cover to close.

CAUTION

- **Always carefully remove the fuse box covers and refit them correctly to avoid problems with your vehicle.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to avoid the entry of dust or humidity. Dirt and humidity inside fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.**

Note

In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be changed by a specialised workshop.

Changing fuses in the engine compartment

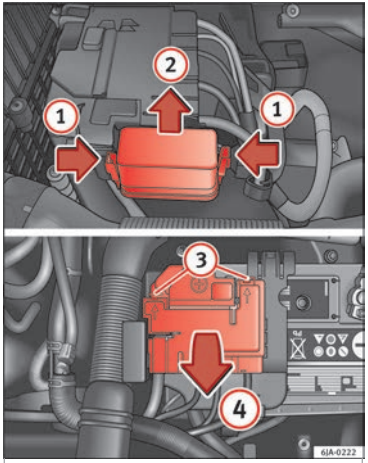

Fig. 140 Battery: fuse cover (version 1).

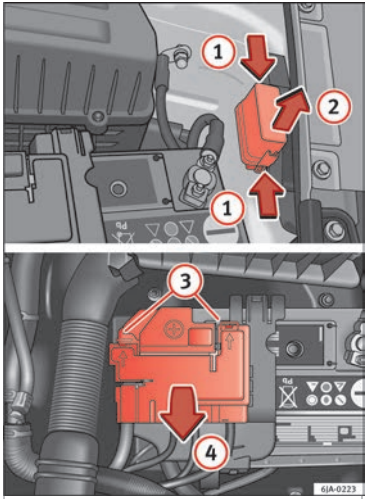

Fig. 141 Battery: fuse cover (version 2).

- Press the flexible tabs on the fuse box cover in the direction indicated by the arrows (1) ››› Fig. 140.
- Remove the cover by sliding it in the direction indicated by arrow (2).
- Use a flat-headed screwdriver to unlock the holes (3).
- Open the cover in the direction indicated by the arrow (4).

Replacing a blown fuse

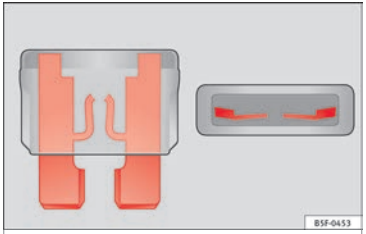

Fig. 142 Image of a blown fuse

Preparation

- Switch off the ignition, lights and all electrical equipment.
- Open the corresponding fuse box ››› page 164.

Identifying a blown fuse

A fuse is blown if its metal strip is ruptured ››› Fig. 142.

Point a lamp at the fuse. This will make it easier to see if the fuse is blown.

To replace a fuse

- Remove the fuse.
- Replace the blown fuse by one with an *identical* amperage rating (same colour and markings) and *identical* size ››› ❗.

»

- Replace the cover again or close the fuse box lid.

CAUTION

If you replace a fuse with higher-rating fuse, you could cause damage to another part of the electrical system.

Changing bulbs

Introduction

Changing bulbs requires a certain degree of practical skill. If in doubt, we recommend you have defective bulbs changed by a specialised service or, in case of an emergency, seek professional assistance.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before changing a bulb.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands. The fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, reducing bulb life and causing condensation on the reflector surface, thus reducing effectiveness.
- A bulb must only be replaced by one of the same type. The type is indicated on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.
- There is a storage area for the bulb box in the spare wheel well or below the carpet in the luggage compartment.

The light source used for each function is listed below:

Double headlights

Dipped beam: H7 Long Life

Main beam: H7

Side lights: W5W Long Life

Turn signals: PY21W NA

Daytime driving lights: P21W Super Long Life

WARNING

- **Take particular care when working on components in the engine compartment if the engine is warm. Risk of burns.**
- **Bulbs are highly sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.**
- **The high voltage element of gas discharge bulbs* (xenon light) must be handled correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of death.**
- **When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp parts in the headlight housing.**

CAUTION

- **Remove the ignition key before working on the electric system. Otherwise, a short circuit could occur.**
- **Switch off the lights and the parking light before changing a bulb.**

For the sake of the environment

Please ask your specialist retailer how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.

Note

- **Depending on weather conditions (cold or wet), the front lights, the fog lights, the rear lights and the turn signals may be temporarily misted. This has no influence on the useful life of the lighting system. By switching on the lights, the area through which the beam of light is projected will quickly be demisted. However, the edges may continue to be misted.**
- **Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also that of all other road users.**
- **Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.**
- **Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands, use a cloth or paper towel instead. Otherwise, the fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, they will be deposited on the reflector and damage its surface.**

Double headlight bulbs

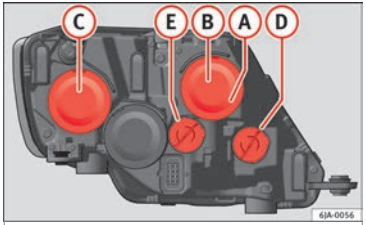

Fig. 143 Main headlight bulbs.

Installation position of double headlight bulbs

- (A) Side lights
- (B) Main beam headlights
- (C) Dipped beam headlights
- (D) Turn signal lights
- (E) Daylight

Changing side light bulbs

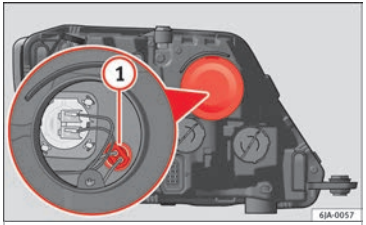

Fig. 144 Changing side light bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the protective cover ››› **Fig. 144**.

– Remove the bulb holder ››› **Fig. 144** (1) by pulling it outwards.

– Remove the bulb by pulling it out and fit the new one.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

– Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during operation.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing main beam headlight bulbs

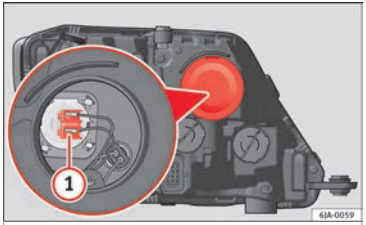

Fig. 145 Changing main beam headlight bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the protective cover.

– Remove connector ››› **Fig. 145** (1) by pulling outward.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that it fits correctly into the recess on the reflector.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

– Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during operation.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing the dipped headlight bulb

Fig. 146 Changing dipped beam headlight bulbs: wheel housing.

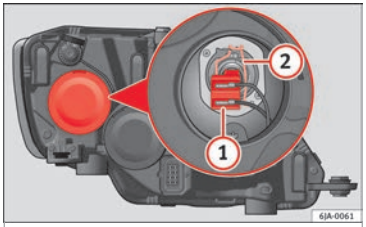

Fig. 147 Changing dipped beam headlight bulbs.

– Turn the wheel for access to the wheel housing cover and remove the cover ››› **Fig. 146**.

– Remove the protective cover from the headlight ››› **Fig. 147**.

– Remove connector ››› **Fig. 147** (1) by pulling outward.

– Unclip the retainer spring ››› **Fig. 147** (2) pressing clockwise and inwards.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that the lug on the base fits into the recess on the reflector.

– Fit the connector.

– Fit the protective cover. Make sure that the cover fits correctly on the housing during operation.

– Replace the wheel housing cover.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing turn signal bulbs

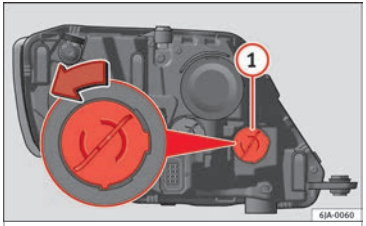

Fig. 148 Changing turn signal bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the bulb holder ››› **Fig. 148** (1) anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anti-clockwise at the same time.

– Fit the replacement bulb in the bulb holder and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing daytime driving light bulbs

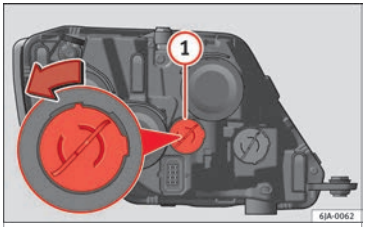

Fig. 149 Changing daytime driving light bulbs.

– Raise the bonnet.

– Turn the bulb holder ››› **Fig. 149** (1) anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it anti-clockwise at the same time.

– Fit the replacement bulb in the bulb holder and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

– Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing front fog light bulbs

Front fog light bulb

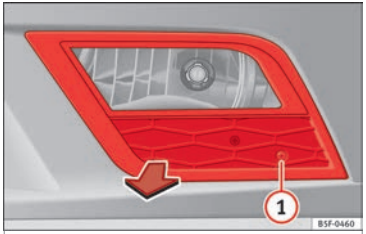

Fig. 150 Front fog light.

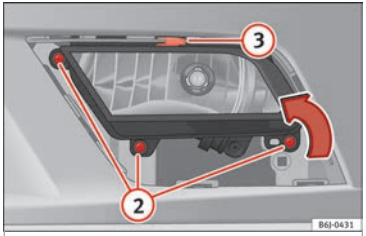

Fig. 151 Front fog light.

– Remove the bolt ››› **Fig. 150** (1) from the fog light grille with a screwdriver.

– Subsequently, remove the clips located on the edge of the grille with gentle leverage.

– Remove the bolts (3x) ››› **Fig. 151** (2) to remove the fog light.

– Remove the metal clip situated on the upper part of the fog light by pulling towards the exterior of the vehicle ››› **Fig. 151** (3).

Remove the bulb holder

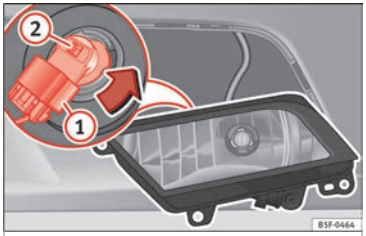

Fig. 152 Front fog light.

– Remove connector ››› **Fig. 152** (1) from the bulb.

– Turn the bulb holder ››› **Fig. 152** (2) anti-clockwise and pull.

– Remove the bulb by pressing on the bulb holder and turning it counter-clockwise at the same time.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

– Check that the bulb works properly.

Changing bulbs for rear lights (in side panel)

Removing tail light

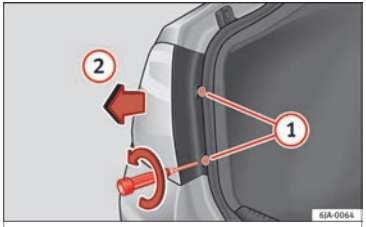

Fig. 153 Remove the rear light unit from side panel.

Check which of the bulbs is defective.

– Open the luggage compartment to access the rainduct area. »

– Take the screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit and loosen (turning anti-clockwise) and remove the two retaining screws that secure the front of the light ››› Fig. 153 ①, taking care not to lose them.

– Pull the rear light unit backward (››› Fig. 153 ②) to remove the light from its housing.

Remove the bulb holder

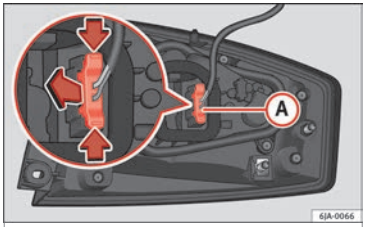

Fig. 154 Light connector at the rear of the rear light unit.

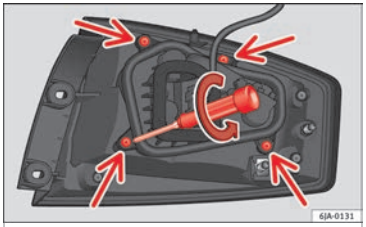

Fig. 155 Retaining screws on reverse side of rear light unit.

– Disconnect the light connector Ⓐ ››› Fig. 154 by moving its side levers (arrows) and pulling the connector outwards.

– Place the light on a level, horizontal surface on top of a soft cloth so as not to scratch the outer glass.

– Unscrew the four retaining screws from the bulb holder anti-clockwise using a screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit ››› Fig. 155. Take care not to lose the bulb holder retaining screws.

Changing bulbs

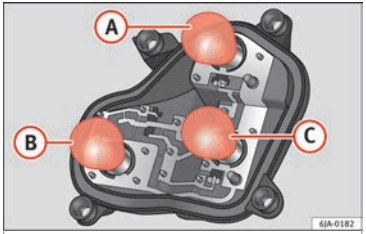

Fig. 156 Position of the bulbs in the bulb holder

The bulbs are secured with a bayonet fastener. The table below gives an overview of the bulb positions.

– Lightly press the defective bulb into the bulb holder, then turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Fit the new bulb, pressing it into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.

– Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.

– Check that the new bulb works properly.

– Replace the bulb holder.

– Screw in the bulb holder using the four screws, turning them clockwise.

Position of the bulbs

››› Fig. 156	Bulb function
A	Turn signals: PY21W NA LL
B	Side lights-brake lights: P21/5W
C	Side lights: P21/5W

Note

Check the condition of the seal. If damaged, a replacement can be acquired from an Official Service.

Fitting rear light

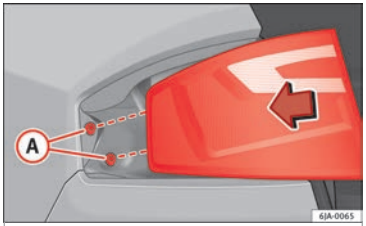

Fig. 157 Fit the tail light unit.

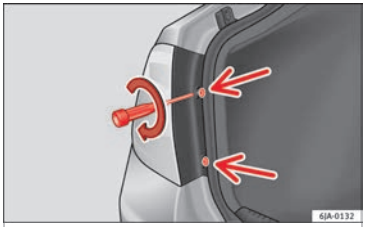

Fig. 158 Fit the tail light unit.

– Make sure the connector is correctly in place.

– Press the rear light unit backwards (driving direction) by fitting the fastenings into the rubber mountings ››› **Fig. 157** (A).

– Take the screwdriver or a Torx 20 key (T20) from the vehicle tool kit and tighten (turning clockwise ››› **Fig. 158**) the two retaining screws that secure the front of the light.

Changing rear lights (in rear lid)

Remove the bulb holder

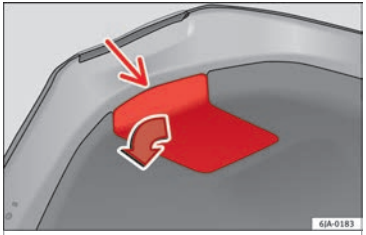

Fig. 159 Remove the cover from the boot lid. »

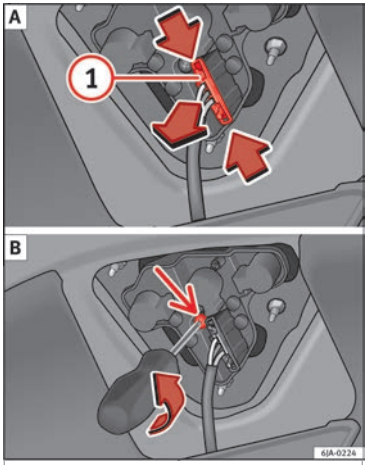

Fig. 160 Remove the lamp holder

The rear lid must be open to change the bulbs.

You can access the bulb holder for the inner tail lights through the inside of the rear lid.

– Check which of the bulbs is defective.

– Open the cover to access the lights, turning it by hand in the direction indicated by the arrows.

– Access the lights by disconnecting the connector (1) ››› **Fig. 160** A and unscrewing the bulb holder ››› **Fig. 160** B. Take care not to lose the bulb holder retaining screw.

– Change the bulbs ››› **page 172**.

Changing bulbs

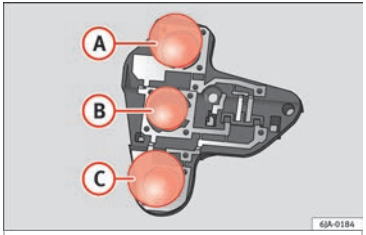

Fig. 161 Position of the bulbs in the bulb holder

The bulbs are secured with a bayonet fastener. The table below gives an overview of the bulbs ››› **table on page 172**.

– Lightly press the defective bulb into the bulb holder, then turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.

– Fit the new bulb, pressing it into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.

– Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.

– Check that the new bulb works properly.

– Re-install the bulb holder ››› **page 172**.

– Screw in the bulb holder.

Position of the bulbs

››› Fig. 161	Bulb function	
A	Reverse light	P21W
B	Side lights	R5W LL
C	Fog lights	P21W

Note

One of the two sides may not be fitted with a fog light, depending on the country and type of driving. In this case, the hole for the light is covered.

Fitting the bulb holder

– Position the bulb holder on the tail light and align it so that it is securely seated.

– Screw in the bulb holder using the corresponding screw.

– Make sure the connector is correctly in place.

– Close the inner trim cover.

Note

Check the condition of the seal. If damaged, a replacement can be acquired from an Official Service.

Changing bulb for the number plate light

Remove the bulb holder

Fig. 162 Removing number plate light

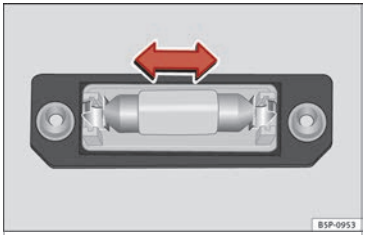

Fig. 163 Changing the bulb.

– Unscrew the screws to remove the bulb ››› **Fig. 162**.

– Remove the bulb, moving it in the direction of the arrow and outwards ››› **Fig. 163**.

– Installation involves all of the above steps in reverse sequence.

Technical specifications

Technical specifications

Important information

Important

The information in the vehicle documentation always takes precedence over the information in this Instruction Manual.

All technical specifications provided in this documentation are valid for the standard model in Spain. The vehicle data card included in the Maintenance Programme or the vehicle registration documents shows which engine is installed in the vehicle.

The figures may be different depending whether additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Abbreviations used in the Technical Specifications section

Abbreviation	Meaning
kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
PS	Pferdestärke (horsepower), formerly used to denote engine power.
rpm	Revolutions per minute - engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
litres per 100 km	Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km (70 miles).
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per km (mile) travelled.
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
CN	Cetane number, indication of the diesel combustion power.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle identification data on the data sticker

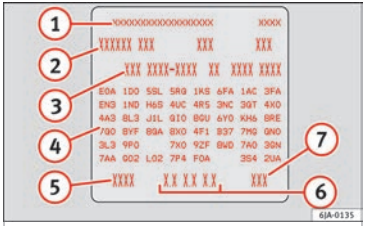

Fig. 164 Data sticker.

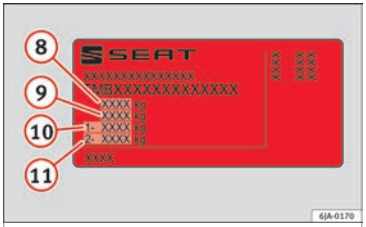

Fig. 165 Identification plate

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ››› Fig. 164 is located on the boot floor and is also attached to the Maintenance Programme.

The following information is provided on the vehicle data sticker:

1. Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2. Vehicle model
3. Identifying letters of the gearbox/number of the original paint finish/Interior equipment number/engine power/engine identifying letter
4. Partial description of the vehicle
5. Weight in running order
6. Fuel consumption (in litres per 100 km) – urban/on the motorway/combined
7. Combined CO_2 emissions (g/km)

Type plate

The type plate ››› Fig. 165 is located at the bottom of the front driver side door pillar between the front and rear doors.

The type plate indicates the following weights:

(8) Total permitted weight of the vehicle when loaded

(9) Maximum authorised weight of the vehicle with a trailer, when the vehicle operates as a tractor

(10) Maximum permitted load of the front axle

(11) Maximum permitted load of the rear axle

Weight in running order

The weight in running order only has one approximate value. This value corresponds to the minimum operative weight of the vehicle without additional equipment that increases its weight, i.e. air conditioning, spare wheel, towing bracket.

The running order weight also includes 75 kg of the weight of the driver and service fluids, in addition to a fuel tank at 90% capacity.

From the difference between the total permitted weight in running order the approximate carrying capacity can be calculated ››› ⚠.

The carrying capacity must include:

- occupants,
- all pieces of equipment and other weights,
- roof loads including the roof rack,
- equipment that is not included in the running order weight,
- when using the towing bracket, the drawbar load (max. 50 kg)

Calculating fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to the ECE regulations and the EU specifications

Calculation of fuel consumption for urban driving begins when cold-starting the engine. Then, normal city driving is simulated.

In calculating extra-urban driving fuel consumption, braking and acceleration is done in all gears, as in daily use of the vehicle. Driving speed varies within a range of 0 and 120 km/h (75 mph).

The consumption value in combined driving is composed of 37% of the value of urban driving and 63% of the value of extra-urban driving.

⚠ WARNING

The maximum permitted weight values must not be exceeded – Risk of an accident and damage to the vehicle!

ⓘ Note

- **If you wish to calculate the exact weight of your vehicle please contact a SEAT dealer.**

- **Depending on the volume of equipment, driving style, road conditions, weather conditions and the condition of the vehicle, consumption values can differ from the theoretical values stated here.**

Information on fuel consumption

Fuel consumption

The consumption and emission details shown on the vehicle data sticker differ from one vehicle to another.

Vehicle fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions appear on the vehicle data sticker in the spare wheel well, inside the boot and on the rear cover of the Maintenance Programme.

The fuel consumption and CO_2 emission values refer to the weight category assigned to your vehicle according to the engine and gearbox combination, as well as the specific equipment fitted, and is only used to compare between the different models.

The fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions do not depend only on the performance of the vehicle, they can also differ from the established values depending on other factors such as driving style, road conditions, traffic conditions, environmental conditions, load and number of passengers. »

Calculation of fuel consumption

The consumption values have been calculated based on measurements performed or supervised by certified CE laboratories according to the latest version of directives 715/2007/EC and 80/1268/CEE (for more information consult the European Union Publications Office at EUR-Lex: © European Union, http://eur-lex.europa.eu/en/index.htm) and are valid for the kerb weight indicated for the vehicle.

Note

In practice, and considering all the factors mentioned here, consumption values can differ from those calculated in the current European regulations.

Weights

Kerb weight refers to the basic model with a fuel tank filled to 90% capacity and without optional extras. The figure quoted includes 75 kg to allow for the weight of the driver.

Special versions, optional equipment fittings or retro-fitting accessories will increase the weight of the vehicle ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect vehicle handling and lead to an accident. Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit road conditions and requirements.**
- **Never exceed the gross axle weight rating or the gross vehicle weight rating. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, which could lead to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Towing a trailer

Trailer weights

Trailer weight

The trailer weights and drawbar loads approved are selected in intensive trials according to precisely defined criteria. The approved trailer weights are valid for vehicles in the *EU* for maximum speeds of 80 km/h (50 mph) (in certain circumstances up to 100 km/h (62 mph)). The figures may be different in other countries. All data in the official vehicle documentation takes precedence over these data at all times ››› ⚠.

Drawbar loads

The *maximum* permitted drawbar load on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed **50 kg**.

In the interest of road safety, we recommend that you always tow approaching the maximum drawbar load. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor, if the drawbar load is too small.

If the maximum permissible drawbar load cannot be met (e.g. with small, empty and light-weight single axle trailers or tandem axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1 metre), a minimum of 4% of the actual trailer weight is legally required for the drawbar load.

⚠ WARNING

- **For safety reasons, do not exceed the 80 km/h (50 mph) limit. This is also valid in countries where higher speeds are permitted.**
- **Never exceed the maximum trailer weights or the drawbar load. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**

Wheels

Tyre pressure, snow chains, wheel bolts

Tyre pressures

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the inside of the fuel tank flap. The tyre pressure values given there are for *cold* tyres. Do not reduce the slightly raised pressures of warm tyres ››› ⚠.

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the *front wheels*.

Consult the section “wheels” of this manual.

Wheel bolts

After the wheels have been changed, the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ››› ⚠. The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is **120** Nm.

⚠ WARNING

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Checking the tyre pressure is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents - particularly at high speeds.**
- **If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.**

Note

We recommend that you ask your Technical Service for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

Engine data

Petrol engine 1.2 55 kW (75 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
55 (75)/5,400	112/3,750	3/1,198	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Performance	
Top speed (km/h)	175 (5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	9.3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	13.9
Consumption (l/100 km)/ CO_2 (g/km)	
Urban cycle	8.1/187
Extra-urban cycle	4.6/107
Combined	5.9/137
Weights (in kg)	
Gross vehicle weight	1,595
Weight in running order (with driver)	1,135
Gross front axle weight / Gross rear axle weight	800 / 830
Permitted roof load	75
Maximum trailer weights (in kg)	
Trailer without brakes	560
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	950

Performance	
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	750

Petrol engine 1.2 TSI 63 kW (85 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
63 (85)/4,800	160/1,500-3,500	4/1,197	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Performance		
Top speed (km/h)	183 (5)	
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.6	
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	11.8	
Consumption (l/100 km)/ CO_2 (g/km)		**Ecomotive**
Urban cycle	6.5/151	5.9/137
Extra-urban cycle	4.4/103	4.3/100
Combined	5.1/119	4.9/114
Weights (in kg)		
Gross vehicle weight	1,615	
Weight in running order (with driver)	1,155	
Gross front axle weight / Gross rear axle weight	820 / 830	
Permitted roof load	75	
Maximum trailer weights (in kg)		
Trailer without brakes	570	
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1,100	
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	900	

Petrol engine 1.2 TSI 77 kW (105 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
77 (105)/5,000	175/1,550-4,100	4/1,197	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Performance			
Top speed (km/h)	195 (5)		
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.1		
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	10.3		
Consumption (l/100 km)/ CO_2 (g/km)	**without Start-Stop**	**with Start-Stop**	**with Start-Stop + 185 tyre**
Urban cycle	6.9/160	6.4/149	6.3/146
Extra-urban cycle	4.6/107	4.3/100	4.2/98
Combined	5.4/125	5.1/118	5/116
Weights (in kg)			
Gross vehicle weight	1,635		
Weight in running order (with driver)	1,175		
Gross front axle weight / Gross rear axle weight	840 / 830		
Permitted roof load	75		
Maximum trailer weights (in kg)			
Trailer without brakes	580		
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1,200		
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1,100		

Petrol engine 1.6 77 kW (105 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
77 (105)/5,600	153/3,800	4/1,598	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Performance		AQ
Top speed (km/h)	193 (5)	192 (5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.2	8.1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	10.6	11.9
Consumption (l/100 km)/ CO_2 (g/km)		
Urban cycle	8.9/212	10.2/244
Extra-urban cycle	4.9/116	6/143
Combined	6.4/152	7.5/180
Weights (in kg)		
Gross vehicle weight	1,615	1,655
Weight in running order (with driver)	1,155	1,195
Gross front axle weight / Gross rear axle weight	820 / 830	820 / 830
Permitted roof load	75	75
Maximum trailer weights (in kg)		
Trailer without brakes	570	590
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1,200	1,200
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1,000	1,000

Petrol engine 1.4 90 kW (122 PS) Automatic

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
90 (122)/5,000	200/1,500-4,000	4/1,390	Super 95 RON/Normal 91 RON[a)]

[a)] Slight power loss.

Performance	
Top speed (km/h)	206 (6)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	6.4
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	9.5
Consumption (l/100 km)/ CO_2 (g/km)	
Urban cycle	7.4/172
Extra-urban cycle	4.8/112
Combined	5.8/134
Weights (in kg)	
Gross vehicle weight	1,690
Weight in running order (with driver)	1,230
Gross front axle weight / Gross rear axle weight	900 / 820
Permitted roof load	75
Maximum trailer weights (in kg)	
Trailer without brakes	610
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1,200
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1,200

Diesel Engine 1.6 CR 66 kW (90 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
66 (90)/4,200	230/1,500-2,500	4/1,598	Diesel according to standard EN 590, min. 51 CN[a)]

[a)] **C**etane **N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the diesel combustion power.

Performance	Manual	Automatic
Top speed (km/h)	184 (5)	184 (6)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.9	7.9
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	12.0	12.2
Consumption (l/100 km)/ CO_2 (g/km)		
Urban cycle	5.6/147	5.6/146
Extra-urban cycle	3.7/97	3.9/103
Combined	4.4/114	4.5/118
Weights (in kg)		
Gross vehicle weight	1,725	1,745
Weight in running order (with driver)	1,265	1,285
Gross front axle weight / Gross rear axle weight	930 / 830	950 / 830
Permitted roof load	75	75
Maximum trailer weights (in kg)		
Trailer without brakes	630	640
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1,200	1,200
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1,200	1,200

Diesel Engine 1.6 CR 77 kW (105 PS)

Power output in kW (PS) at rpm	Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	Fuel
77 (105)/4,400	250/1,500-2,500	4/1,598	Diesel according to standard EN 590, min. 51 CN[a)]

[a)] **C**etane **N**umber (cetane index) = Measure of the diesel combustion power.

Performance	without Start-Stop	with Start-Stop	with Start-Stop + 185 tyre	Ecomotive
Top speed (km/h)	190 (5)			190 (4-5)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	7.1			7
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	10.4			10.3
Consumption (l/100 km)/ CO_2 (g/km)				
Urban cycle	6/158	4.9/129	4.8/126	4.5/118
Extra-urban cycle	3.7/98	3.5/92	3.4/90	3.4/90
Combined	4.6/120	4/106	3.9/104	3.8/99
Weights (in kg)				
Gross vehicle weight	1,725			1,723
Weight in running order (with driver)	1,265			1,263
Gross front axle weight / Gross rear axle weight	930 / 830			930 / 830
Permitted roof load	75			75
Maximum trailer weights (in kg)				
Trailer without brakes	630			–
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 8%	1,200			–
Trailer with brakes, gradients up to 12%	1,200			–

Dimensions

Length/Width (mm)	4,482/1,715
Height at kerb weight (mm)	1,466
Front and rear projections (mm)	876/1,004
Wheelbase (mm)	2,602
Turning radius (m)	10.2
Front/rear[a)] track width (mm)	1,463/1,500

[a)] This data will change depending on the type of wheel rim.

Capacities

Capacities	
Fuel tank	55 litres
Windscreen washer fluid container with headlight washer	3.5 litres/ 5.4 litres
Tyre pressure	
Summer tyres: Correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap.	
Winter tyres: The pressure of these tyres is 0.2 bar higher than that of summer tyres (2.9 psi / 20 kPa).	

Index

A

ABS 109
control lamp 36
Accessories 122
Adjusting the seat belt height 15
Adjustment
seats 72
steering wheel 7
Aerial 124
see radio reception 126
Airbag 16
Airbag covers 19
Airbags
description 17
Airbag system 16
activation 18
control lamp 18
front airbags 19
functioning 18
Head-protection airbags 21
side airbags 20
air conditioning
air conditioning 88
Air conditioning
air conditioning 90, 92
Climatronic 93
Air recirculation
manual air conditioning 92
Alarm 57
Anti-lock system 109
Anti-theft alarm system 57
Armrest 74
rear 74
Ashtrays 78
Aspects to take into account before starting the vehicle 5
ASR 109
Assistance systems 35
control lamp 35
Assistance system
ABS 109
ASR 109
Start-Stop 112
Assistance systems
ABS 36
cruise control 111
EDL 110
ESC 35, 108
parking aid 110
Audible signal 11
Auto-check system 44
Automatic disconnection of electrical equipment 143
Automatic gearbox 100
back-up programme 104
Driving programmes 103
instructions for use 100
kick-down 101
manual release of the selector lever 162
parking 101
Selector lever lock 103
selector lever positions 101
starting 101
stopping 101
Tiptronic 102
Automatic headlight control 63
AUX-IN 51

B

Back-up
automatic gearbox 104
Battery
automatic disconnection of electrical equipment 143
changing 143
charging 142
checking acid level 142
replacing the battery 53
safety instructions 140
winter service 142
Before starting the vehicle 5
Belt tightening 15
Bonnet
closing 133
opening 133
Boot
hook 84
retaining elements 83
retaining nets 84
see boot hatch 59
Boot hatch 59
automatic lock 58
Boot lid 59
automatic lock 58
Brake assist 108
Brake fluid
checking 139
Brakes
brake fluid 139
handbrake 99
running in 104
warning lamps 33
Brake servo 99
Button on driver's door
electric window opening and closing 60

C

Car computer
  see multi-function display 39
Care of the vehicle 122
Care of vehicle
  automatic car wash 124
  cleaning chrome 125
  cleaning wheels 126
  headlights 126
  high-pressure cleaners 124
  leatherette 127
  natural leather 127
  plastic parts 125
  polishing of paintwork 125
  rubber seals 126
  seat belts 128
  upholstery 127
  washing 124
  washing by hand 124
  waxing 125
Catalytic converter 105
Central locking button 56
Central locking system 54
  locking 55
  unlocking 55
Changing
  a wheel 150
  battery 143
  blades 162
  bulbs 166
  engine oil 137
  fuses 163
  wiper blades 163
Changing bulbs
  double headlight bulbs 167
  front fog light bulbs 169
Changing gear
  recommended gear 32
Charging the battery 142
Checking
  battery acid level 142
  brake fluid 139
  coolant 138
  engine oil 136
  oil level 136
  windscreen washer 139
Checking fluid levels
  engine compartment 134
Childproof locks 57
Child safety 24
Child seat
  Categorisation in groups 26
Child seats 26
  ISOFIX system 27
  safety instructions 25
  securing 26
  Top Tether system 27
Cigarette lighter 78
Cleaning 122
  chrome 125
  headlights 126
  leatherette 127
  natural leather 127
  plastic parts 125
  upholstery 127
  wheels 126
Cleaning chrome
  see care of vehicle 125
Climatronic
  air recirculation 95
Clock 32
Coat hooks 80
Compartments 76
Computer
  see multi-function display 39
control lamp 18
Control lamps 32
Controls and displays
  summary 29
coolant
  temperature display 31
Coolant 137
  checking 138
  topping up 138
  warning lamp 35
Correct adjustment of front seat head restraints .. 8
Correct adjustment of rear seat head restraints
  In-use and non-use positions 10
Correct sitting position
  front passenger 7
  Incorrect sitting position 9
  passenger 8
Cruise control 111

D

Dangers in not using the seat belt 13
Dashboard 30
Dash panel 30
  see dash panel 30
Data sticker 174
Daytime driving light 62
Defrosting rear window 67
Diesel
  fuel 131
  see fuel 131
Diesel fuel
  winter driving 131
Digital clock 32
Dimensions 186
Dipstick 136

Disconnect the airbag 22
Display
  service interval 45
Disposal
  Seat belt tensioners 16
Door
  childproof locks 57
  manual locking 161
Door handle 126
Door lock 126
Drink holder
  Drink holder 77
  rear 77
Driver
  see Correct sitting position 6, 7, 8
Driving
  driving through water 107
  Economically/with Respect for the Environ-
    ment 106
  Emission values 174
  fuel consumption 174
Driving abroad
  Headlights 66
Driving Economically 106
Driving safety 5
Driving the vehicle with a trailer 114
Driving with Respect for the Environment 106

E

EDL 110
Electric window opening and closing
  button on driver's door 60
  switch on driver's door 60
  switch on rear door 60
Electric windows
  operation 60
  roll-back function 61
  Roll-back function 61
Electric window switch
  operation 60
Electronic differential lock 110
Electronic immobiliser 97
Emergency
  jump-starting 157
  repairing of tyres 154
  towing the vehicle 159
Emission values 174
Engine
  run-in 104
  starting the engine 97
  switching off the engine 98
Engine compartment 134
  battery 140
  brake fluid 139
  closing 133
  coolant 137
  opening 133
Engine coolant 137
Engine data 178
Engine oil 135
  changing 137
  Oil properties 136
  Specifications 135
  topping up 137
  warning lamp 34
Environment 106
  Environmental friendliness 105
Equipments 122
ESC 108
  control lamp 35
extend boot lock limit
  see boot hatch 58

F

Fastening rings 82
Filling the tank 129
Filling with fuel 129
Fire extinguisher 149
First-aid kit 149
Floor mats 10
Front airbags 19
  safety instructions 19
Front fog light bulb 169
Front seats 71
Fuel 129
  fuel gauge 31
  refuelling 129
  see fuel 129
  unleaded petrol 130
Fuel consumption 106
Fuel tank 129
Fuel: saving 106
Fuses
  changing 163
  Fuse box 164
  Identifying blown fuses 165
  Identifying by colours 164
  position 163
  Preparation before replacing 165
  Replacement 165

G

Gauge
  coolant temperature 31
  fuel level 31

H

Handbrake 99
Hazard
  warning lights 65
HBA 108
Head-on collisions and the laws of physics 13
Head-protection airbags 21
  safety instructions 22
Headlights
  Driving abroad 66
  Headlight washer system 70
Head restraints 72
Headrests 72
Heated rear window 67
Heating 88
  air recirculation 90
  defrosting windows 89
  exterior mirrors 70
  rear window 67
  seats 73
HHC 108
Hill-hold control 108
Horn 29
How to jump start description 158

I

Identification plate 174
Ignition 97
Ignition lock 97
Immobiliser 97
Informative display
  see MAXI DOT 43
Interior
  ashtray 78
  cigarette lighter 78
  lighting 66
  Storage compartment 76
ISOFIX system 27

J

Jack 150
  fixing 153
Jump-starting 157

K

Keys 53

L

Lever
  main beam headlights 63
  turn signals 63
Lifting the vehicle 153
Lights
  AUTO 63
  changing 166
  changing bulbs 166
  control lamps 32
  Daytime driving light 62
  dipped beam 62
  front fog lights 64
  Front fog lights with cornering function 64
  hazard warning lights 65
  headlight flasher 63
  Interior 66
  Main beam headlights 63
  parking lights 65
  parking lights on both sides 65
  range control of main lights 62
  rear fog light 64
  side lights 61
  switching lights on and off 61
  turn signals 63
Load 174
Load compartment in the luggage compartment
  see Loading the luggage compartment 81
Loading the luggage compartment 81
Locking
  central locking system 55
  manual locking 161
  remote control 52
Locking a gear 100
Luggage carrier 85
Luggage compartment
  Category N1 vehicles 83
  light 67
  manual release 161
  Manual release of the rear lid 161
  shelf 85
  see also Loading the luggage compartment .. 81

M

Make-up
  mirror 68
Manual
  door locking 161
  release of the rear lid 161
  Release of the selector lever 162
Manual gearbox
  Gear lever 100
MAXI DOT 43
  main menu 43
  Settings 44
MDI 51
Mirror
  exterior mirrors 70
  Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment 70
Modifications 122
Multi-function display
  function 39

Multifunction display
Memory 39
operation 40
Multimedia 51

N

Number of seats 11

O

Oil 135
see engine oil 136
Oil level
checking 136
Oil properties 136
On board computer
see multi-function display 39
Opening and closing from the inside 56
Opening and closing windows electrically
button on driver's door 60
switch on driver's door 60
switch on rear door 60
Outside temperature 40
Overview 29
Overview of the engine compartment 134

P

Paint
see paint damage 125
Paint damage 125
Parking
Parking aid 110
Particulate filter 37
Passenger
see Correct sitting position 6, 7, 8
Pedals 10
Petrol
see fuel 130
Polishing paintwork
see care of vehicle 125
Positioning seat belts
during pregnancy 14
seat belts 14
Power 79
Power socket 79
Power steering 97
Preheating – warning lamp 36
Preventing damage to the vehicle 108
Puncture repair 154

R

Rack 85
Radiator fan 135
Radio reception
aerial 126
Raising the vehicle 153
rear vision mirror
exterior mirrors 70
Rear vision mirror
Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment 70
Recommended gear 32
Recommended gear display 32
Remote control 51
synchronisation 52
Remote control key
replacing the battery 53
Replacement parts 122
Rev counter 31
Rims 144
Roof carrier
attachment points 86
roof load 86
Run-in
engine 104
the first 1,500 km 104
Running in
brake pads 104
the tyres 104

S

Safe driving 5
Safe Lock 55
Safety 5
child safety 24
child seats 24
Head restraints 72
Safety equipment 5
Safety first 5
Safety instructions
front airbags 19
head-protection airbags 22
side airbags 20
using child seats 25
Safety notes
Seat belt tensioners 16
Using seat belts 12
Seat adjuster 6
Seat belt
warning lamp 34
Seat belt control lamp 11
Seat belt protection 11
Seat belt release 14
Seat belts 11
Adjustment 14
cleaning 128
control lamp 11
Safety notes 12
unfastened 13

Seat belt tensioner
control lamp 18
Seat belt tensioners 15
Seats
adjustment 72
head restraints 72
heating 73
Selector lever
see selector lever positions 101
Selector lever positions 101
Service display 45
Setting
clock 32
Settings
exterior mirrors 70
Interior rear vision mirror with manual anti-dazzle adjustment 70
light range control 62
Side airbags 20
safety instructions 20
Sitting position
driver 6
Sitting position for vehicle occupants 6
Snow chains 149, 177
Spare
changing a wheel 150
Spare wheel 146
Speedometer 31
see speedometer 31
Start-Stop
description 112
Starting the engine 97
Starting with jump leads
jump-starting 157
Steering wheel 7
Steering wheel controls 46
Storage
luggage compartment 82
Storage compartment 76, 85
Summary
control lamps 32
controls and displays 29
Sun visors 68
see sun visors 68
Switching off the engine 98

T

Technical data 174
Temperature selection
heating 89
Tightening torque of wheel bolts 177
Tiptronic 100
see automatic gearbox 102
Tool kit 150
Topping up
coolant 138
engine oil 137
windscreen washer 139
Top Tether system 27
Tow-away protection system 58
Towing 159
Towing a trailer 176
Towing bracket 160
rear 161
Towline anchorage 160
rear 161
Traction control 109
Trailer 114
Towing a trailer 115
Trailer weights 176
Transport
roof rack 85
Transporting children 24
Trip 32
Trip counter 32
Tyre Mobility System 154
see Tyre Mobility System 154
Tyre pressures 177
Tyre repair kit 154
Tyre repair set
see Tyre Mobility System 154
Tyres
see Wheels and tyres 146
Tyre tread 144
Tyre tread depth 144

U

Underbody sealant 127
Unlocking
central locking system 55
remote control 52
Unlocking and locking from the inside 56
USB 51

V

Vehicle care
door lock cylinder 126
Vehicle interior monitoring 58
Vehicle status
see Auto-check system 44
Vehicle tool kit 150
Ventilation slits 82
Voice control 49
activation 50
disabling 50
enter the number 50

W

Warning symbols
see warning lamps 32
Warning triangle 149

Washing 122
automatic car wash 124
by hand 124
washing with high-pressure cleaners 124
Waxing
see care of vehicle 125
Wearing suitable shoes 10
Weights 174
Wheel bolts 177
anti-theft wheel bolts 154
caps 151
loosening and tightening 152
Wheels 177
Wheels and tyres
changing a wheel 150
general notes 144
interchanging tyres 145
life cycle of tyres 144
replacing tyres 146
snow chains 149
spare wheel 146
wheel bolts 152
wheel trim 151
winter tyres 148
Why assume the correct sitting position? 16
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 8
Why wear seat belts? 11, 16
Windows
de-icing 125
see electric window opening and closing 60
Windscreen
see radio reception 126
Windscreen washer
checking 139
headlight washer system 70
topping up 139
winter 139
Windscreen washer fluid
warning lamp 38
Windscreen washer system 139
Windscreen wiper
jets 69
windscreen washer 139
Windscreen wipers
changing the rear window wiper blade 163
changing windscreen wiper blades 162
control 69
winter driving
diesel fuel 131
Winter service
battery 142
Cleaning windows 125
snow chains 149
Winter tyres
see Wheels and tyres 148
Wipe interval 69

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the “Copyright” Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.11.14

Inglés 6JA012720BC (11.14)

6JA012720BC

SEAT